

Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan



Department of Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai

Ka ū ki mata Nuku
Ka ū ki mata Rangi
Ka ū ki tēnei whenua
Hei whenua, hei kai mau te ate o te tauhou

Hold fast to the land
Hold fast to the sky
Hold fast to this land
Lest it may be treasured by others in time

“A sense of history

I find it consistent with a sense of history to look forward as well as backward. I study the future as much in contrast to the past as in terms of it. What will the Waimakariri Valley hold for young mountaineers in the year 1999? Will it be so full of heliports or autobahns that even the sandflies will feel themselves to be displaced insects?”

Pascoe, J. 1965

Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan

Published by
Department of Conservation
Te Papa Atawhai
Canterbury Conservancy
Private Bag 4715
Christchurch
December 2007.

Cover: William leads the way on the Bealey Valley track through a clearing in mountain beech forest, being 'watched over' by a Māori traveller (with thanks to Geoffrey Cox for the art-work); Rome and Goldney Ridges converging in the background on Mount Rolleston *Kaimatau*

ISBN 978-0-478-14275-4 (hard copy)

ISBN 978-0-478-14276-1 (CD)

ISBN 978-0-478-14277-8 (Web pdf)

ISSN-1171-5391-14

Canterbury Conservancy Management Planning Series No. 14

CONTENTS

Preface	7
How to use this plan	9
<u>Administration of the Park</u>	<u>9</u>
1 Introduction	
1.1 Management Planning	11
1.2 Legislative Context	
1.2.1 The National Parks Act 1980	12
1.2.1.1 National Park Bylaws 1981	12
1.2.2 The General Policy for National Parks 2005	13
1.2.3 The Conservation Act 1987	13
1.2.3.1 The Canterbury and West Coast <i>Tai Poutini</i> Conservation Management Strategies	14
1.2.4 The Resource Management Act 1991	14
1.2.5 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996	15
1.2.6 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu 1997 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998	15
1.2.6.1 Protocols	16
1.2.6.2 Taonga Species	16
1.2.7 The Crown Minerals Act 1991	17
1.2.8 Non-Statutory Planning	17
1.2.9 Other Statutory Bodies with Administrative Responsibilities	17
2 The Park, its Features and Heritage	
2.1 Introduction	19
2.2 Ngāi Tahu Values Relating to the Park	20
2.3 Indigenous Species, Habitats, Ecosystems and Natural Features	
2.3.1 Indigenous Species, Habitats and Ecosystems	21
2.3.2 Biosecurity and Threats	23
2.3.3 Freshwater Species, Habitats and Ecosystems	24
2.3.4 Geological, Landform and Soil Features	24
2.3.5 Climate and Hydrology	26

2.4	Historical and Cultural Heritage	27
2.5	Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment	
2.5.1	Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment in the Park	28
2.5.2	Recreational Opportunity Settings	32
2.6	Adjoining Lands	33
2.7	The Park in the Regional and National Context	
2.7.1	The Regional Context	37
2.7.2	The National Context	38
2.8	Further Information	38
3.	Management Issues, Resolving Conflicts and Identification of Places	
3.1	Management Issues	39
3.2	Resolving Conflicts	42
3.3	Identification of Places	42
4	Combined Park Objectives	44
5	Treaty of Waitangi	
5.1	Introduction	46
5.1.1	Treaty Relationship	46
6	Park Objectives, Policies and Outcomes	
6.1	Introduction	48
6.2	Preservation and Heritage	
6.2.1	Preservation and Heritage Objectives	50
6.2.2	Indigenous Plants and Animals	51
6.2.2.1	Hawdon/Poulter Valleys and the Kākāriki Karaka/Orange-fronted Parakeet Programme	56
6.2.3	Geological Features	58
6.2.4	Historic Features and Memorials	60
6.2.5	Introduced Animals	64
6.2.6	Introduced Plants	72
6.2.7	Natural Hazards	77
6.2.8	Fire Control	78
6.2.9	Boundaries and Park Additions	80
6.2.10	Preservation and Heritage Outcomes	83
6.3	Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment	
6.3.1	Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment Objectives	87
6.3.2	Public Access and Use	88
6.3.3	Public Facilities	97

6.3.4	Information and Interpretation	108
6.3.5	Public Safety and Emergency Services	111
6.3.6	Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles	112
6.3.7	Waste Disposal	117
6.3.8	Public Use Outcomes	119
6.4	Concessions and Other Uses	
6.4.1	Concessions and Other Uses Objectives	122
6.4.2	Ngāi Tahu Customary Use	123
6.4.3	Concessions General	124
6.4.4	Research and Information Needs	127
6.4.5	Sporting Events	130
6.4.6	Existing Club and School Lodges	134
6.4.7	Guiding and Mountain and Bush-craft Instruction	136
6.4.8	Aircraft	138
6.4.9	Commercial Filming and Photography	141
6.4.10	Stone and Gravel Removal	143
6.4.11	Military Manoeuvres, Exercises and Training	146
6.4.12	Survey Installations	147
6.4.13	Telecommunications	148
6.4.14	Concessions and Other Uses Outcomes	150
7.	<u>The Aickens to Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor</u>	
7.1	Introduction	151
7.2	Corridor Objectives, Policies and Outcomes	
7.2.1	Corridor Objectives	153
7.2.2	Indigenous Plants and Animals	154
7.2.3	Geological Features	155
7.2.4	Historic Features and Memorials	155
7.2.5	Introduced Plants and Animals	155
7.2.6	Public Access, Use and Facilities	157
7.2.7	Landscape Management	158
7.2.8	Catchment Management	160
7.2.9	State Highway 73	163
7.2.10	Midland Railway	179
7.2.11	Power Transmission	181
7.2.12	Temple Basin Ski Field	184
7.2.13	Otira and Arthur's Pass Villages and Bealey Spur Settlement	190
7.2.14	Corridor Outcomes	192

Appendices

Appendix A: The Arthur's Pass National Park Bylaws 1981	193
Appendix B: Protocols on the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues	199
Appendix C: Taonga Species	209
Glossary	211
References	219

Figures

Figure 1: Arthur's Pass National Park Locality Map	10
Figures 2 & 2A: Status of Adjoining Lands	34 & 35
Figure 3: Riversdale Flats Land Status	82
Figures 4 & 4A: Recreational Opportunity Settings and Public Facilities	92 & 93
Figures 5A, B & C: State Highway 73 Road Improvement Corridor	173

Tables

Table 1: Historic features of known historic interest and importance	27
Table 2: Historic features yet to be fully located, recorded and assessed.	28
Table 3: Introduced animals within and/or of threat to Arthur's Pass National Park	71
Table 4: Introduced plants within and/or of threat to Arthur's Pass National Park	76
Table 5: Recreational Opportunity Settings Description and Criteria	95
Table 6: Short Walks, Walking Tracks, Tramping Tracks, Routes and Bridges/Cableway within the Park	102
Table 7: Huts, Bivvies and Shelters within the Park	103
Table 8: Car Parks, Amenity Areas and Campsites within the Park	104
Table 9: Information and Interpretation Sites and Topics	110

Preface

This Management Plan for Arthur's Pass National Park has been reviewed in accordance with the procedures set out in section 47 of the National Parks Act 1980. The plan is a statutory document and provides for the management of the Park in accordance with the National Parks Act, the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005) and the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000). This is the second review of the original plan published in accordance with the National Parks Act 1952 and it sets out the intentions for managing the Park over the next ten years.

Arthur's Pass National Park is clearly highly regarded by the people of Canterbury and the West Coast particularly and by others both in New Zealand and overseas. This provides a strong incentive to getting this Plan right.

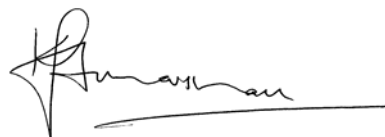
This Plan has been prepared by the Canterbury Conservancy of the Department of Conservation, after seeking out the public's thoughts and consulting with West Coast Tai Poutini Conservancy, Ngāi Tahu, the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board and other interested people.

While management plans cannot override the provisions of legislation and general policy they should provide a strong statement of management intent. The availability of resources and the level of community support will determine the Plan's achievements. The Plan does not establish a promised level of funding. Nonetheless, the stated objectives and policies are underscored by a commitment to endeavour to obtain the necessary funding and support.

The Management Plan recognises the mana and tāngata whenua status of Ngāi Tahu over their ancestral lands and waters within the Park. It aims to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi and to clearly acknowledge and give effect to the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. For this reason you will find several references to the tāngata whenua and Ngāi Tahu within this Plan.

The Plan will be reviewed again within ten years from the date of approval, but may be reviewed in whole or in part at any time as a result of changes in circumstance.

This plan was approved by the New Zealand Conservation Authority on the 13th day of December 2007.



Kerry Marshall
Chairman,
New Zealand Conservation Authority

HOW TO USE THIS PLAN

This Management Plan provides for the future management of Arthur's Pass National Park. The Plan provides a legislative context and background section for the Park from which objectives, policies and methods have been developed.

Each Park policy is numbered and has a corresponding explanation. Where a method is required to implement a policy, the number of the method matches the policy.

Section 6.3 Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment, and section 6.4 Concessions and Other Uses have some cross-over; the former is primarily about public facilities services and actions, the later where a concession or other approval is required.

When considering the Plan it is important to read and consider the Plan and its provisions as a whole. Various objectives and policies may influence the interpretation of other parts of the Plan.

Please note carefully section 6.1 Introduction to the Park Objectives, Policies and Outcomes, especially the conventions with respect to the use of the words "will", "should" and "may" within the policies and methods.

The Plan will provide guidance to assist Park managers in the day-to-day management of the Park. Where additional information that may assist decision making is available, the information is referenced in the text. A full list of references is included at the end of this document.

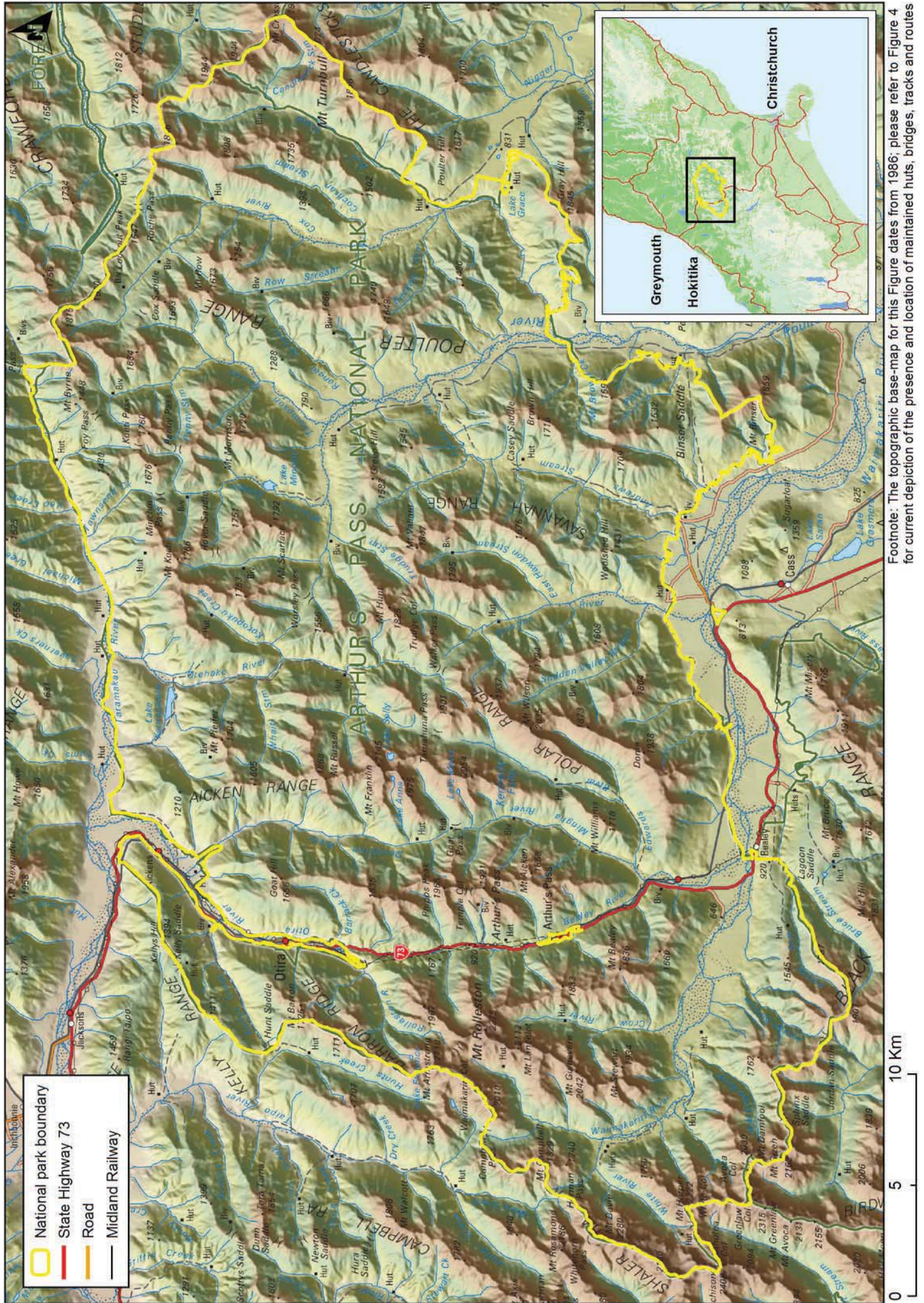
ADMINISTRATION OF THE PARK

The Park straddles the Main Divide boundary between the Canterbury and West Coast *Tai Poutini* Conservancies. Administration of the Park is shared by agreement between the two Conservancies, through the Waimakariri and Hokitika Area offices. The agreement recognises legal requirements, the location of Department offices and staff, shared expertise and ongoing work programmes. The Waimakariri Area office is located at Rangiora, in recognition of the Area's responsibilities from the upper Rakaia catchment to Lewis Pass. The Arthur's Pass office contains the Arthur's Pass Field Centre and the Park Visitor Centre. The Hokitika Area office is located at Hokitika.

For management plan purposes the whole of the Park comes under the umbrella of the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board. For conservation management strategy purposes the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000), the *West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Management Strategy* (draft released in August 2007 and has no effect until approved) and the Canterbury Aoraki and West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Boards' roles, each extend only to the Main Divide.

Despite sounding complex these administrative arrangements do work and are found in other national parks that straddle the Main Divide (e.g. Aspiring and Kahurangi).

Figure 1: Arthur's Pass National Park locality map



Footnote: The topographic base-map for this Figure dates from 1986; please refer to Figure 4 for current depiction of the presence and location of maintained huts, bridges, tracks and routes

1. Introduction

1.1 MANAGEMENT PLANNING

The purpose of a management plan is to provide for the management of the Park in accordance with the National Parks Act 1980, the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005) and Conservation Management Strategies.

The plan will direct the work of the Department in the Park from 2007-2017. As a guide for the next ten years, the plan seeks to give clear directions for management, while remaining flexible enough to allow for changing circumstances within the ten-year time frame.

The process for the preparation of a management plan is set out in section 47 of the National Parks Act and is summarised as follows:

- an initial notice is published asking for suggestions and comments (completed September 2004);
- a draft management plan is prepared in consultation with the Conservation Board (undertaken 2004-05);
- the draft management plan is released for public submissions for at least two months (April - June 2006);
- those wishing to be heard in support of their submissions appear before representatives of the Department and the Conservation Board (October 2006);
- the draft plan is revised in light of submissions;
- the Conservation Board considers the revised draft and the summary of submissions and may make further amendments.
- When satisfied, the Board recommends the revised draft to the New Zealand Conservation Authority (NZCA) for approval (April 2007).
- The NZCA considers the amended draft, modifies it as it considers appropriate and refers the draft to the Minister of Conservation for comment.
- When satisfied, the NZCA approves the management plan (December 2007).

This Plan is the third management plan for Arthur's Pass National Park and replaces the previous Plan approved in 1994.

1.2 LEGISLATIVE CONTEXT

1.2.1 The National Parks Act 1980

Section 4(1) of the National Parks Act, states:

“It is hereby declared that the provisions of this Act shall have effect for the purpose of preserving in perpetuity as national parks, for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use, and enjoyment of the public, areas of New Zealand that contain scenery of such distinctive quality, ecological systems, or natural features so beautiful, unique, or scientifically important that their preservation is in the national interest”.

Section 4(2) provides that:

“It is hereby further declared that, having regard to the general purposes specified in subsection (1) of this section, national parks shall be so administered and maintained under the provisions of this Act that -

- (a) They shall be preserved, as far as possible in their natural state:
- (b) Except where the Authority otherwise determines, the native plants and animals of the parks shall as far as possible be preserved and the introduced plants and animals shall as far as possible be exterminated:
- (c) Sites and objects of archaeological and historical interest shall as far as possible be preserved:
- (d) Their value as soil, water, and forest conservation areas shall be maintained:
- (e) Subject to the provisions of this Act and to the imposition of such conditions and restrictions as may be necessary for the preservation of the native plants and animals or for the welfare in general of the parks, the public shall have freedom of entry and access to the parks, so they may receive in full measure the inspiration, enjoyment, recreation, and other benefits that may be derived from mountains, forests, sounds, seacoasts, lakes, rivers, and other natural features.”

This Management Plan must be in accordance with the Act.

1.2.1.1 National Park Bylaws 1981

Section 56 of the National Parks Act provides for the Minister of Conservation to make bylaws. Bylaws regulate activities undertaken by the public in the Park that cannot be enforced through policies. The Arthur’s Pass National Park Bylaws 1981 include bylaws regulating pollution of parks, disposal of rubbish, camping, use of park huts, use of cableway, fires, vehicles, parking of vehicles, aircraft, competitive sports, use of spotlights for hunting, portable generators and public address systems. Park bylaws must be consistent with this management plan and, if the current ones are not, additions or changes to them must be requested. The Arthur’s Pass National Park Bylaws 1981 came into force on 1 April 1981, were amended in 1996 and are attached as Appendix A.

1.2.2 The General Policy for National Parks 2005

Section 44 of the National Parks Act 1980 provides for the adoption by the New Zealand Conservation Authority (the Authority) of statements of general policy (*General Policy*) that give both direction and guidance to conservation managers and to communities on how to preserve and protect these special areas and the indigenous species in them. In particular, the purpose of this *General Policy* is to implement the National Parks Act 1980 and to provide consistent national direction for the administration of national parks through conservation management strategies and national park management plans.

This management plan must be in accordance with the *General Policy*.

1.2.3 The Conservation Act 1987

The Conservation Act 1987 established the Department of Conservation and directs the administration and management of all land and natural and historic resources under the Department's control (other Acts also direct the management of lands administered by the Department).

Section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987 requires of the Department that the Act and the Acts listed in the First Schedule to that Act, which include the National Parks Act, shall so be interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the principles are not clearly inconsistent with the provisions of any of these Acts¹.

Section 6 of the Conservation Act 1987 sets out the functions of the Department. Of particular relevance to this plan are sections 6(ab), (b), (c)(i) and (e) which state:

“(ab) To preserve so far as is practicable all indigenous freshwater fisheries, and protect recreational freshwater fisheries and freshwater habitats:

(b) To advocate the conservation of natural and historic resources generally:

(c) To promote the benefits to present and future generations of -

- i. The conservation of natural and historic resources generally and the natural and historic resources of New Zealand in particular;

(e) To the extent that the use of any natural or historic resource for recreation or tourism is not inconsistent with its conservation, to foster the use of natural and historic resources for recreation, and allow their use for tourism.”

The general functions of the Department of Conservation as set out in the Conservation Act must be read subject to the National Parks Act. In consequence, where there is a conflict or difference between the two, the National Parks Act will apply.

¹ Ngāi Tahu Māori Trust Board v Director-General of Conservation (1995) 3NZLR 533.

1.2.3.1 The Canterbury and West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Management Strategies

Under section 17D of the Conservation Act each conservancy must have a Conservation Management Strategy (CMS) which applies to all land administered by the Department in that conservancy. The *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* was approved in June 2000. The *West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Management Strategy* is still in preparation, with a draft to be released in 2007.

“The purpose of a [CMS] is to implement general policies and establish objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources, including any species, managed by the Department under the Wildlife Act 1953, the Marine Reserves Act 1971, the Reserves Act 1977, the Wild Animal Control Act 1977, the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978, the National Parks Act 1980, the New Zealand Walkways Act 1990, or the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000, or this Act, or any of them, and for recreation, tourism, and other conservation purposes” (Conservation Act 1987, section 17D(1)).

The Canterbury CMS is the umbrella document which sets the general direction for the management of all land administered by the Department within the Conservancy, including this National Park. The Canterbury and West Coast *Tai Poutini* CMS must not derogate from the *General Policy for National Parks*. This management plan must not derogate from the Canterbury CMS nor with the West Coast *Tai Poutini* CMS once it is approved.

1.2.4 The Resource Management Act 1991

The purpose of the Resource Management Act is:

“...to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources”, where “sustainable management” means “...managing the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural wellbeing and for their health and safety while -

- (a) Sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and
- (b) Safeguarding the life supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and
- (c) Avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.” (Section 5, Resource Management Act 1991)

The Resource Management Act is administered by the Ministry for the Environment and is generally implemented by local government through district and regional plans and statements prepared by councils. The activities within the Park, including those of the Department, are affected by the provisions of the *Canterbury Regional Policy Statement* (1998), the *West Coast Regional Policy Statement* (2000), the *Proposed Selwyn District Plan, Township and Rural Volumes* (2000 & 2001), the *Westland District Plan* (2002) and regional plans.

The Department must apply for resource consents for activities as required under these plans. Section 4 of the Resource Management Act however, provides a limited exemption to the Department for land use activities it undertakes within the Park that are provided for in a management plan or a CMS and which do not have significant adverse effects outside the boundary of the Park.

Under sections 61(2)(a), 66(2)(c) and (74)(2)(b) of the Act, councils need to have regard to conservation management strategies and to this Management Plan when preparing their plans, policies and in consideration of resource consent applications, to the extent that the Strategy and this Plan have a bearing on resource management issues.

1.2.5 Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996

The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 established Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu as a corporate body with the authority to act on behalf of all Ngāi Tahu Whānui, subject to the provisions of the Act.

1.2.6 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu 1997 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

The purpose of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 is:

“(a) To record the apology given by the Crown to Ngāi Tahu in the deed of settlement ...; and

(b) To give effect to certain provisions of that deed of settlement, being a deed that settles the Ngāi Tahu claims.”

The Act binds the Crown. It is to be interpreted in a manner which best furthers the agreements expressed in the *Deed of Settlement* (1997). This Deed prescribes a number of values and principles that are to be addressed by the Department of Conservation in the management of the lands that it administers within the Ngāi Tahu tākiwa/territory. These have been specifically addressed, where relevant, within this Plan.

Introductory section U of the Act records:

“On 21 November 1997, the Crown and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu entered into the deed of settlement in which the Crown acknowledged that Ngāi Tahu suffered grave injustices which significantly impaired Ngāi Tahu’s economic, social and cultural development and which recorded the matters required to give effect to a settlement of all of Ngāi Tahu’s historical claims.”

The settlement resolved the long-standing grievances of the WAI 27 claim.

Mechanisms established in the *Deed of Settlement* and the subsequent Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 place a number of specific obligations on the Department with respect to the land that it administers, including Arthur’s Pass National Park. These obligations are in addition to the obligations imposed by section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987.

One aspect of the Deed of Settlement is the official place name amendment, from Southern Alps to now be Southern Alps/Kā Tiritiri o te Moana.

1.2.6.1 Protocols

Pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, the Minister of Conservation has issued Protocols in relation to the Department's relationship with Ngāi Tahu. Section 281 of the Act provides:

“...the term protocol means a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu , which sets out:

- (a) How the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers, and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngāi Tahu claim area; and
- (b) How the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and provide for Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu's input into its decision-making process.”

The “specified matters” dealt with in the protocols are:

- cultural materials;
- freshwater fisheries;
- the culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu;
- historic resources;
- Resource Management Act 1991 involvement;
- visitor and public information.

The protocols make general statements about how the Department should conduct work with Ngāi Tahu in these areas. The protocols have been quoted where relevant within this Plan and are included in Appendix B.

1.2.6.2 Taonga Species

Schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 lists those species of indigenous plants and animals that have been identified as taonga species in the *Deed of Settlement*. Those taonga species found in or near the Park are listed in Appendix C.

Ngāi Tahu value taonga species as highly prized treasure and negotiated with the Crown to have these species identified as taonga species in the Settlement. Provisions were also negotiated with the Crown to enable Ngāi Tahu to participate in the management of taonga species.

The Crown acknowledges the cultural, spiritual, historic, and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with taonga species. These values have been addressed in the Plan policies where relevant.

1.2.7 The Crown Minerals Act 1991

The Crown Minerals Amendment Act (No. 2) 1997 has restricted mining for Crown-owned minerals in national parks established as at 1 October 1991 (this includes Arthur's Pass National Park) or otherwise included in Schedule 4 of the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Only limited and low impact mining activities may still be permitted in certain circumstances, as described in section 61(1A)(a-e) of the Act.

1.2.8 Non-Statutory Planning

The Department produces plans, strategies and reviews of particular issues both on a local and national basis. Important documents include the national *Visitor Strategy* (1996), *Historic Heritage Strategy* (1997) and *Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy* (1997), recovery plans for threatened native species such as mohua/yellowhead and kiwi, and local animal/plant pest control plans. This Plan is a further means of guidance for the implementation of these documents and strategies, within the Park, to the extent that they are consistent with the National Parks Act 1980.

1.2.9 Other Statutory Bodies with Administrative Responsibilities

- Environment Canterbury and West Coast Regional Council have responsibility for, amongst other things, resource management, transport planning, civil defence, soil conservation, water management, noxious plants and agricultural pests. Environment Canterbury has flood warning devices and related equipment in the Park (Resource Management Act 1991 and Local Government Act 2002);
- Selwyn and Westland District Councils have, additional to those matters in 1.2.4 above, responsibility for controlling the uses of land and subdivision outside the Park (Resource Management Act 1991), for approving building construction standards in the Park (Building Act 2004) and for some sewerage and water supply functions (Local Government Act 2002);
- The North Canterbury and Westland Fish and Game Councils are responsible for the management of sports fish, salmon and trout, (Conservation Act 1987) and are jointly responsible with the Department of Conservation for the management of introduced game birds (Wildlife Act 1953).
- New Zealand Police have responsibility for search and rescue activities, traffic safety and community law and order;
- Canterbury and West Coast District Health Boards are responsible for public health, including water supply standards;
- Ministry of Commerce has responsibility for administering the exploration, prospecting and mining of minerals;
- New Zealand Fire Service has responsibility for determining standards of fire prevention, safety and control;
- Transit New Zealand has responsibility for management, maintenance and reconstruction of State Highway 73. Much of the present road alignment is

not legalised. Therefore the boundaries between Park and State Highway are not formalised;

- Ontrack, the operational arm of the New Zealand Railways Corporation, has responsibility for the Midland Railway infrastructure and provides access for Toll New Zealand as the rail operator;
- Transpower, Southpower and Westland Electric Power Boards have responsibility for the supply and reticulation of electricity and maintenance of facilities in the area; and
- The Civil Aviation Authority is responsible for aviation safety regulation under the Civil Aviation Act 1990.

2. The Park, its Features and Heritage

2.1 INTRODUCTION

The headwaters of the Waimakariri and Otira Rivers were reserved for national park purposes in 1901 at the suggestion of the eminent botanist Dr Leonard Cockayne. It was not until 1 August 1929 that a national park was formally gazetted, after public insistence led by prominent engineer Sir Arthur Dudley Dobson, one of the first Europeans to be shown 'Arthur's' Pass itself. Subsequent additions have increased the area of the Park to approximately 114,356 hectares. In 2004 the Park celebrated seventy-five years of preserving its distinctive qualities, beauty, uniqueness and scientific importance (see 1.2.1 The National Parks Act 1980).

Arthur's Pass National Park straddles the Main Divide of the Southern Alps / Kā Tiritiri o te Moana; this 'western' and 'eastern' separation (more a northern and southern) has a dominating influence on the character of the Park. The rugged terrain, the wide range of altitudes, the relatively severe mountain climate, the swift rivers and the passes also contribute to the nature of the Park in various ways. The Park is noted for its alpine flora and the sharp contrasts in scenery that result from the topography and climatic influence.

Three settlements play an important role for the Park, although none are within the Park boundary. Arthur's Pass and Otira villages provide important services. Arthur's Pass has the Park Visitor Centre and major accommodation facilities, while Bealey Spur, further to the south-east, has holiday accommodation.

The various natural, cultural and scientific values enable the Park to be enjoyed by people in many ways, as well as being a scenic interlude for those travelling through, either by rail or by State Highway 73 joining Canterbury (*Ka Pakihi Whakatekateka o Waitaba*) and the West Coast (*Te Tai Poutini*).

Aspects specific to the Park include:

- its ecological diversity and long-term scientific studies;
- the east-west regional utility corridor for road, rail, power transmission and telecommunications (radio, telephone and television links) which pass through or are adjacent to the Park;
- the high degree of accessibility to the Park, particularly from State Highway 73 and the Midland Railway and the degree of visitor development which has resulted from this; and
- its proximity to a predominantly urban population of some 540,000 people within Canterbury and the West Coast.

2.2 NGĀI TAHU VALUES RELATING TO THE PARK

The tāngata whenua are Kāti Hawea, Rapuwai, Waitaha, Kāti Mamoe and Ngāi Tahu. Ngāi Tahu, descendants of the above tribes, are the people who hold the rangatiratanga (chieftainship) and mana (authority) within the takiwā (area) of Ngāi Tahu whānui, which includes the Park. The Crown has formally acknowledged this rangatiratanga through the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 and in the apology recorded in the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

Ngāi Tahu are governed by a “tribal council”, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, which is made up of 18 Papatipu Rūnanga holding the rights and responsibilities to defined areas of land and waters within the takiwā of Ngāi Tahu. These rights are founded on traditional occupations and whakapapa from ancient times to the present day. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, based in Christchurch, is the collective tribal voice, a function that in relation to most matters is exercised through Papatipu Rūnanga.

The Papatipu Rūnanga with particular interest in day-to-day management of the Park are Te Ngāi Tuahuriri Rūnanga and Te Rūnanga o Ngāti Waewae, centred at Tuahiwi in North Canterbury and Hokitika on the West Coast *Tai Poutini* respectively. These organisations represent the tāngata whenua for Arthur’s Pass National Park.

Te Taumutu Rūnanga, centred at Taumutu in mid-Canterbury, and Te Rūnanga o Kaikoura centred at Kaikoura in Marlborough, are Papatipu Rūnanga that also have an interest in the Park and its adjoining lands and have been consulted in the preparation of this plan.

Kaimatau is the ancient Māori name for Mount Rolleston; Kaimatau embodying a tipua, a supernatural being, who also gave his name to ‘Arthur’s Pass’ - Te Tarahaka o Kaimatau. A similar name, Kaimātau, is applied to Mount Murchison. An early Māori/Pakeha association with the area and Arthur’s Pass has been preserved by the naming of Mount Tarapuhi after the Kati Waewae rangatira from the Poutini Ngāi Tahu, who first pointed out the location of the Pass to Sir Arthur Dudley Dobson. There are other places (e.g. Mount Koeti and Tainui Peak; Kahutea Col; Waimakariri River) with Māori names of old.

The catchments of the Waimakariri and Taramakau Rivers were used extensively in pre-European times by Māori in their seasonal round of food gathering activities and east-west travel along ara hikoi (Nga huarahi o nga tupuna - the roads of the ancestors), to the pounamu lands of Tai Poutini. Mahinga kai plants² from the area include neinei/emiemi (mountain neinei/spiderwood), tikumu (mountain daisy), karamu, kiekie, hoheria (mountain ribbonwood), toii (mountain cabbage tree), ti parae (forest cabbage tree) and kawakawa (pepper tree).

From these values for the area flow the various interests that Ngāi Tahu have in the management of the Park’s waters (in whatever form they may be), species (both the taonga species in 1.2.6.2 and others), public activity in the Park and information to the public.

² Tikumu, karamu, kiekie and hoheria are all taonga species – see Appendix C.

2.3 INDIGENOUS SPECIES, HABITATS, ECOSYSTEMS AND NATURAL FEATURES

2.3.1 Indigenous Species, Habitats and Ecosystems

Habitats, ecosystems, limits and localities

The geology and soils together with the differences in rainfall and altitude contribute materially to the pattern of Park vegetation and produce a variety of habitats which contain a wide range of plant and animal life.

In the national picture the Park straddles five ecological districts within three ecological regions (Whitcombe district in Whataroa region; Arthur's Pass and Minchin districts in Hawdon region; and Poulter and Cass districts in Puketeraki region). This indicates the ecological diversity of the Park.

The Park is the known southern limit of ten species and the known northern limit of three species. The Park is significant for the extensive tall tussock grasslands and extensive alpine and nival herb fields which are a distinct feature; for the biogeographic diversity of its plant life, ranging from the dry eastern mountain beech forest, through rata/kamahi forest, to the western lowland podocarp forest, and because the transition of these natural features can be readily viewed or accessed from a state highway.

The Park is a "type" locality and has been a collection site for many plants. It is one of the three major faunal type localities in New Zealand, the other two being Tongariro National Park and the Mount Arthur area in Kahurangi National Park.

In the vicinity of Arthur's Pass itself are the "Cockayne Transects", nineteen vegetation monitoring transects established by Dr Leonard Cockayne (see 2.1 Introduction) in 1897/98 to record secondary succession after fires, the last fire being in 1933. Initially only qualitative measurements were taken, but this expanded to quantitative measurements in 1932, 1965/66 and 2001. The transects are of national and international significance in ecological research as being amongst the longest-running permanently marked studies of secondary succession anywhere. Monitoring of the transects has shown very slow rates of succession since the fires.

Flora and vegetation

Most of the eastern slopes are covered in almost uniform mixed beech; predominantly mountain beech. There is forest from the valley floors to the timberline where the sub-alpine vegetation takes over. Grass and shrubland predominate on the frosted flats. In the higher rainfall western portion a diverse lowland podocarp forest, comprised of principally the hardwoods kamahi and quintinia, predominates at the lower levels. This forest type changes to rata/mountain totara forest at higher altitude. In the west a striking contrast to the eastern forests is evident in the fern flora.

Other vegetation communities include bogs on the Main Divide around Arthur's Pass and similar poorly drained sites. Many minor habitats, such as small streams, tarns and lakes with distinct plants and animals, are present in valley flats, forests and alpine areas. The timberline is marked by the stunting of trees which reach an abrupt limit at about 1200 metres above sea level. The subalpine shrubland above this timberline also varies from west to east, the western side being much denser with an extremely diverse species structure. In contrast, the vegetation on the eastern side is much less dense and dominated by inaka (*Dracophyllum*) and snow totara. This zone grades into shorter alpine snow tussock grasslands with diverse flora according to habitat differences (late snow, rock outcrops, screes, waterlogged soils, etc).

Wide shingle riverbeds with sparse plant cover are a feature. Short tussock and shrubs such as matagouri cover the valley flats.

The indigenous plants and vegetation of the Park are well described in Burrows (1986).

Within the Park and its immediate vicinity 13 plant species have been identified (de Lange et al, 2004) as acutely or chronically threatened. Two of these, *Pittosporum patulum* and *Ranunculus ternatifolius*, are nationally endangered.

Birds

Both eastern and western vegetation types provide habitats for the many native bird species present in the Park. These include kükupa/wood pigeon, piwakawaka/fantail, koekoeā/longtail cuckoo and pipiwharau/roa/shining cuckoo, ruru koukou/morepork, kea, kākā, tauhou/silvereye, pipipi/brown creeper, riroriro/grey warbler, titipounamu/rifleman, pūtakitaki/paradise shelduck, kōparapara/bellbird and miromiro/tomtit. While most species are found throughout the Park, some species prefer the habitat provided by either the western or eastern forest types. Tui are confined to the west, kakaruai/South Island robin are largely confined to the west but do extend east particularly in predator control areas, while kākāriki/yellow-crowned parakeets and mohua/yellowhead are found only in the eastern portion of the Park. Kākāriki/red-crowned parakeets are considered functionally extinct in the Park but have been rarely seen. Roroa/great spotted kiwi are present throughout the Park north of the Waimakariri River valley. Kōwhiowhio/blue duck are found in some streams and rock wrens are found at higher altitudes.

Of the Park's bird species eleven are acutely or chronically threatened (Hitchmough, 2002). The kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet is nationally critical; four species (kōwhiowhio/blue duck, kea, South Island kākā and mohua/yellowhead) are nationally endangered; two species (rock wren and New Zealand falcon) are nationally vulnerable and four species (roroa/great spotted kiwi, kākāriki/yellow crowned parakeet, long tail cuckoo and titipounamu/South Island rifleman) are in gradual decline.

The roroa/great spotted kiwi population's breeding success is largely unknown but thought to be low, with a consequent declining number and aging of birds in the Park. Individual bird loss through wild predators, road kills or dogs would be a significant impact on the population. Whio/blue duck are perilously close to

disappearing from the Park and, like roroa/great spotted kiwi, individual bird loss or habitat disturbance could significantly impact on the population.

Kea are present throughout the Park, with a stable population. South Island kākā are resident in the Taramakau, Deception and Otehake valleys. Their population is declining.

In the Hawdon and Poulter valleys of the Park and in the adjoining upper Hurunui catchment are found the only remaining population of kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet left in New Zealand.

Invertebrates

The Park has been a favourite destination for early entomological expeditions since the 1850s when many specimens were collected and sent back to British museums. As a consequence, many of the “type” localities for New Zealand’s invertebrate fauna originate from the Park. The Park offers a range of different habitats suitable for invertebrates, including alpine tarns and streams, beech forest and rock screes, as well as a range of alpine plants which host native invertebrates. There are several notable species including the alpine weta *Deinacrida pluvialis* and several other undescribed weta species. Curiously, there are a number of invertebrate species that have small but disjunct populations within the Park, e.g. the ground weta (*Hemiandrus ‘fiordensis’*) living in the Park that is otherwise known only from Fiordland. A wide diversity of beetles is present, including a recently described species known only from a handful of specimens in the Otira Gorge. Although many of the invertebrates in the Park are endemic to the region, there are overlaps between the invertebrate fauna occupying the Arthur’s and Lewis Pass area. For example, the native cockroach (*Celatoblatta fuscipes*) and caddisfly (*Xuthotrichia aotea*) occupy both passes.

Many invertebrates occupying the Park are likely to have evolved closely with the alpine plants and as a consequence they are closely linked. For example, the large speargrass weevil (*Lyperobius carinatus*) lives on *Aciphylla* on the dryer eastern side of the Park and can be seen climbing flower heads during summer. There are also a number of day-flying moths occupying the Park that play an important role in pollinating native plant species.

There may be threatened invertebrate species among the Park’s land and freshwater, but current data is not sufficient to confirm this.

2.3.2. Biosecurity and Threats

The Park, like much of the national public conservation lands, has multiple introduced animal and plant issues. Introduced animal threats come both from animals already present in the Park and from others that may spread or be released into the Park. Introduced plants are primarily a threat on the edges of the Park adjoining developed land and in open habitats such as riverbeds. For both animal and plant threats the management response is governed by national priorities and for many species (e.g. stoats and Russell lupins), by high costs and limited current control techniques.

Fire is an ever-present threat, particularly in and adjoining the drier eastern side of the Park and at Park huts. Monitoring has shown that indigenous vegetation

recovers very slowly after fires. The greatest area threat is alongside the State Highway and Midland Railway and at or near settlements.

2.3.3 Freshwater Species, Habitats and Ecosystems

Within the Park there is a range of freshwater habitats, from the large braided Waimakariri River to small steep tributary headwater streams. Within these waterways a multitude of biota occurs, including indigenous and introduced fish.

The Park contains the headwaters of the Waimakariri River; the whole river system considered to be Waters of National Importance for Biodiversity (Type 1) (Chadderton, Brown & Stephens, 2004). The absence of glacial sediment in the river system means it is notable for its groundwater and hyporheic faunas.

In New Zealand there are currently recognised around 37 species of indigenous fish, of which five are currently found within the Park. These are Canterbury galaxias, tuna/longfin eel, upland bully, alpine galaxias and koaro. All five are cryptic species not commonly seen during the day, except for the upland bully that is sometimes seen in still pools. They are largely nocturnal and their colouring camouflages them in the boulders and stones on the stream bed.

Three species of introduced sports fish are in the Park. These are brown trout, rainbow trout and chinook salmon.

The freshwater invertebrate fauna in the Park is diverse and includes kākahi/freshwater mussels, waikōura/freshwater crayfish and many of the young of terrestrial invertebrates such as mayflies, stoneflies and beetles.

Approximately 80 of the 240 species of caddisfly in New Zealand are present including three rare species *Cryptobiosella tridens*, *Paroxyethira auldorum* and *Paroxyethira bintoni*. There are also 16 mayfly species present with many others still awaiting description.

Three freshwater species in the Park are classified as chronically threatened, gradual decline - tuna/longfin eel, waikōura/freshwater crayfish and kākahi/freshwater mussel, but are not threatened within the Park.

2.3.4 Geological, Landform and Soil Features

The Park landforms are characterised by rugged mountains, glaciated passes and valleys and braided stony greywacke riverbeds. These landforms are the result of high tectonic uplift and erosion rates and past extensive glacial processes. Altitude varies from around 270 to 2400 metres. A feature is the relatively close proximity of the headwaters of two large river systems (Taramakau and Waimakariri) that virtually bisect the South Island from west to east.

The Park lies adjacent to a major active plate boundary, the Alpine Fault and is marked by many fault dislocations. The area is subject to earthquakes. The most recent major events occurred in 1929, causing extensive land change in the Otehake, Poulter and Hawdon valleys, and in 1994 in the Anti Crow and Jordan valleys.

Three distinct rock groups occur within the Park (Cave, 1987):

- the Torlesse terrain (hard grey sandstone and mudstone/greywacke), which grades westwards into

- the Haast schist (slaty or banded altered sandstone); these are overlain to various degrees by
- Quaternary ("Ice Age") glacial and river deposits, and locally by modern glacio-fluvial deposits.

These rock types and their associated landforms include examples of both common and rare geological phenomena and landforms. Many examples are easily accessible and some are better preserved than elsewhere in the Southern Alps / Kā Tiritiri o te Moana.

The Quaternary (Pleistocene) ice ages (from 2 million years ago) have left a legacy of glacial and fluvial landforms, some of which have been modified to various degrees by subsequent erosion processes.

The fractured and friable bedrock, acted upon by frost and rainstorms, has formed the vast hillside screes which are significant features of the Park. The screes and other features are also modified by snow and rock avalanches and debris flows. The Park contains many well-displayed Holocene (approximately since 9500 years ago) moraines, with some of the better examples on Arthur's Pass itself.

Ridge rent faults, occurring on mountainsides as a result of gravitational collapse of the mountain, are especially significant as they may assist prediction of future catastrophic rock avalanche sites.

Of particular interest are the numerous fossil locations. There are more of these in the Park than in any comparable area of the Southern Alps / Kā Tiritiri o te Moana. The most important ones contain the various *Monotis* (bivalve) species.

The region surrounding the Park contains some small amounts of valuable minerals, namely gold, sulphides and pounamu but not in proven economic quantities and not within the Park itself as far as is known. Also in the region are some bulk resources such as road gravels, facing stone and rock for river control work. Such material however, usually occurs in areas of slope instability and is of lower quality than material available from the West Coast. It therefore serves only a limited purpose for nearby emergency road and rail flood protection.

The main soils of the Park are derived from greywacke (Torlesse terrain) which soon become leached and acid as they have low reserves of plant nutrients. They are also easily fragmented and, coupled with the severe climate in the region, make the area prone to accelerated erosion. The soils indicate cycles of erosion which commenced well before any human settlement. Since burning and grazing for pastoralism ceased, a new cycle of regeneration with its associated soil stability is developing in the Park. The forests on both sides of the Divide are the main factors in maintaining stable watershed conditions in the Waimakariri and Taramakau catchments.

The Park also lies amid a central South Island geothermal belt that extends from the Copland River in Westland *Tai Poutini* National Park in the south to the Kahutara River in Kaikoura District in the north (Mongillo & Clelland, 1984). In the Park is the Otehake hot spring and at least three seepages, the latter often evidenced only by their smell (e.g. those in the Otira, Mingha and Deception valleys). The Otehake spring varies its appearance depending on flood-induced riverbed changes, but at the time of the last inspection in October 2005 hot and warm water spring outlets

and sands were obvious as were variously coloured chemical and algae deposits alongside the main river channel and within a side channel.

The Otehake and Otira sites are ranked (Houghton et al, 1989) as of regional scientific, scenic or educational value. There are few such features within New Zealand's national parks, but many outside of the parks, including those in the Taipo and Hurunui valleys immediately to the south and north of the Park. They are all potentially vulnerable to adverse effects.

Eleven landforms are recorded "geopreservation sites" (Kenny & Hayward, 1998; Haywood & Kenny 1999). Apart from the geothermal ones mentioned above most are large in scale (e.g. moraines, alluvial fans, debris dams) and only the Arthur's Pass terminal moraine loop, located between State Highway 73, Upper Twin Creek and the Temple Basin cableway is potentially vulnerable to adverse effects.

2.3.5 Climate and Hydrology

The Park has climatic conditions similar to those of other Main Divide mountain regions of the South Island. The prevailing winds are from the west and north-west and are usually accompanied by rain or snow. Easterly and southerly winds usually bring fine weather but can also bring rain or snow.

Snow showers occur at any time of the year at altitudes above 1500 metres, but the bulk of the winter snow begins to fall during June and continues through to September/October. Snow avalanches occur regularly at the higher altitudes.

From October on, warm spring weather and north-west winds induce rapid thaws with consequent rises in river levels.

A sharp rainfall gradient exists from west to east. Precipitation is highest on the western slopes and on the Divide itself, where annual rainfall averages about 5000 millimetres. It reduces to 4500 millimetres at Arthur's Pass village, 1500 millimetres at the Bealey 15 kilometres to the east, and 1000 millimetres at Mt White further east. There are approximately 180 rain days per year at Arthur's Pass village. Much of the rain falls in short, high intensity storms and as much as 250 millimetres may fall in 24 hours. Such falls cause severe flooding of streams and rivers and have in the past led to stone and mud avalanches causing loss of life e.g. as at the original Klondyke Shelter in 1979.

Wide daily and seasonal variations in temperature can occur, with the variations increasing towards the east. Very hot dry periods may occur in summer, resulting in damage to beech forest and a very high fire risk in some parts of the Park.

Frosts are severe, especially at high altitudes and on the eastern slopes and can occur at any time of the year.

The general climate difference from west to east affects public enjoyment and preference and thus the need for visitor facilities.

Climate change predictions and monitoring to date suggest a more predominant westerly wind-flow pattern in the future and warmer temperatures. The effect of this may be increased snow-fall with the increased westerly precipitation, or decreased snow-fall with warmer temperatures and increased westerly winds. More rain and higher average river flows are expected, as are drier conditions in the east.

2.4 HISTORICAL AND CULTURAL HERITAGE

Arthur's Pass National Park is a Park of connection between east and west, the historic link between the provincial centre of Christchurch based on the agriculture and settlement of the Canterbury Plains and the goldfields of the West Coast. Harper and Arthur's passes were two of the old pathways, the ara hikoi, for Māori travelling east-west to the pounamu lands of Tai Poutini. Arthur's Pass was the most important route historically and the main utilities corridor, but Harper Pass also featured strongly and other passes to a lesser extent.

Wāhi tapu, mahinga kai, taumata okiokinga, maunga tipua, roto, awa and other places are of special significance to Ngāi Tahu. Early Māori travellers, European explorers, goldminers passing through, climbers, trampers, hunters, researchers and others have all contributed to the character of the Park. Evidence of their discoveries or activities still remains today. Many of the sites are associated with State Highway 73 and its early use as a main road link between Canterbury and the West Coast. The Park now offers many opportunities for historic appreciation, research, education and interpretation of the features listed below.

Table 1 lists features in the Park which are regarded as being of historic interest and importance, none of which are registered or categorised under the Historic Places Act, but which have clearly defined and known localities. Jacks Hut, Otira Tunnel and Bealey Spur Hut are listed as heritage items in the Selwyn District Plan. The listing is from approximately east to west.

Table 1: Historic features of known historic interest and importance.

- Trust-Poulter Hut (1960, ex-NZFS 6-bunk, SF 70 design);
- Goldney Saddle milestone;
- Bealey Hotel site;
- coach ford approach and milestone at Waimakariri River bridge;
- Bealey Spur musterers' hut (1925);
- Klondyke Corner settlement site and grave;
- old coach road, Klondyke Corner to Arthur's Pass (associated with horse-drawn coach days of the 1860s);
- Otira Railway Tunnel;
- Jack's Hut;
- Dobson Memorial and Centennial Cairn (at the Arthur's Pass summit); and
- Locke Stream Hut (1939; #4 hut on the Harper Pass historic tourist route).

In addition to these in-situ historic sites, there are historic relics and information held by the Department, some of which are displayed in the Visitor Centre (e.g. the 1888 (Seddon) Cobb & Co. coach owned by Canterbury Museum).

There are sites or areas within or adjoining the Park (some may be on legal road or railway land) where historic features are known about, but have yet to be clearly located, site recorded and have their historic significance assessed by the Department, or by the Historic Places Trust should any works be proposed that

would require an archaeological authority under the Historic Places Act 1993. Table 2 lists these known historic sites or areas; others may also exist.

Table 2: Historic features yet to be fully located and/or recorded and assessed.

- Goldney Saddle railway settlement site
- the “BB Track” (Beckett & Bayley), true right Waimakariri River;
- former Anti-Crow Hut doorstep and the Canterbury Mountaineering Club volunteers’ memorial plaque 2005;
- roadmen’s hut sites (partly on SH 73 – see 7.2.9 State Highway 73);
- railway ballast quarry;
- Cora Lynn railway station site;
- Klondyke Corner ice rink;
- Devil's Punchbowl power station site;
- survey stations related to Otira Tunnel triangulation;
- Avalanche Creek water supply tunnel;
- Wardens seat;
- Twin Creek road bridge (currently on legal road – see Method 7.2.9(e));
- Cockayne vegetation transects (see 2.3.1);
- Temple Basin goods lift;
- former SH 73 Zig Zag road alignment;
- Tunnellers’ settlement area and power station head-works (Rolleston River);
- Mount Barron’s Otira tunnel ‘back sight’ trig and track;
- Otira intake for railway and village power;
- Kellys Creek goldminers’ track and shafts;
- Kellys hotel site and Cockayne house site; and
- Aickens settlement site.

2.5 PUBLIC BENEFIT, USE AND ENJOYMENT

2.5.1 Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment in the Park

The Park has wide scope for both active and passive public use as it provides some of the most varied and readily accessible opportunities for mountain recreation and enjoyment in the country, from the icefalls and perpetual snow of the high peaks to the bush and river flats of the lower levels.

Relatively close to large population concentrations, with good road and rail access and extensive surrounding public conservation lands and other recreational opportunities, the Park contributes to a regional demand for variety in public use locations and in standards and means of access into the high country.

From 1980 research (Simmons, 1980) that is still relevant today, six public use groups with different intentions and expectations of the Park were identified. A replicate study undertaken in 1994 (Espiner and Simmons (1998)) identified changes in the visitor group patterns and the emergence of what is probably a distinct seventh group - the multi-sporters. While differing from the groups identified in the Department's *Visitor Strategy* (1996) they can be readily cross-related - the *Visitor Strategy* groups being shown in brackets below. The Park is not seen as providing for one of the Visitor Strategy groups, namely "thrill seekers", although there may be elements of thrill seeking in some mountaineering or skiing activities and in multi-sporting.

While public use is predominantly through independent means, there is concessionaire activity ranging from the operation of the Temple Basin ski field and multi-sport events to some day-visiting and overnight guiding.

The identified public use groups are:

- Passers-through (short stop travellers)

This is the largest group and uses the road and rail links which bisect the Park. Many visitors from overseas or the North Island are generally unfamiliar with the Park, which for them is one stop on a longer touring holiday.

- Day trippers (day visitors)

Many are from Christchurch, but for a significant number the Park is a side trip to a longer touring holiday. This group make a variety of active and passive uses of the fringe areas of the Park - particularly using the Visitor Centre and shorter walks close to Arthur's Pass village and State Highway 73.

- People staying in Arthur's Pass village (overnighters)

This group uses the village as a base (using baches, school and club lodges, and public accommodation), making short visits into the Park. Bach holders are largely from the Canterbury area, mostly from Christchurch. Of those who use public accommodation there is a high number of overseas visitors. It is appropriate to add to this group people using the Temple Basin lodges for other than skiing, the two school lodges at the Hawdon and accommodation at Otira.

- Campers (overnighters)

An increasing trend is for groups to camp near public shelters that are easily accessible from roads. Campers include many family groups with children old enough to make day trips and explore the immediate area around the camp.

- Trampers, hunters and climbers (backcountry adventurers, remoteness seekers)

This group rarely includes small children, but may include young people using the valley's easier tramping tracks and huts. The challenge for many of these groups and individuals is to reach more remote and demanding areas where greater self-reliance is required. For hunters, the ability to locate wild animals is the prime motivation.

- Skiers (backcountry comfort seekers, backcountry adventurers)

The main focus of interest for this group is the Temple Basin ski field which has facilities for downhill skiing. Other forms of skiing, such as cross country and ski mountaineering, occur to a much lesser extent in other parts of the Park.

- Multi-sporters (backcountry adventurers)

This group has emerged largely since the advent of the annual Coast to Coast event in 1983, the Avalanche Peak Challenge in 1991 and of training for these and similar events outside the Park. Most activity involves single days in the Park along either the Deception/Mingha track or the Avalanche Peak/Crow valley track/route, with perhaps an overnight stay at a Park campground or in the village. The days of the events themselves generate the highest use numbers (approximately 600 and 250 competitors respectively, with associated support crews and observers).

Across all the above public use groups it is difficult to estimate total visitor numbers because of the nature of the Park and the number of entry points. The general trend however, has been an increase. Records of people using the Visitor Centre show an average 6% annual increase since the mid 1990s, broadly consistent with predicted national tourist annual increases of 4.5%, to about 155,000 people in 2003/04. This trend may indicate a potential further 55 to 80 % increase in public use over the ten-year life of this Plan. Over 90% of this usage however, is primarily along the State Highway 73 corridor. The summer months of December/April have the highest public use levels and in any one year these may be up to five times higher than winter use levels.

In backcountry areas, information from intention cards and hut book figures suggests that while huts in main valleys are receiving steady, slightly increasing or increased peak period usage, other hut usage is more variable with decreasing, static or slightly increasing usage. Most hut usage is well below nominal hut capacity³.

Hut usage is fickle however, and various factors such as a hut refurbishment or particular mention in publications can significantly change use patterns. Hunting activity was decreasing, both proportionally to other uses and in total numbers, until very recently when a decline in commercial hunting and a consequent increase in deer numbers has seen increased recreational activity.

Other changes are occurring in Park use patterns. From 1980 to 1995 (Espiner and Simmons, 1998) the predominant place of visitor origin shifted from Christchurch (46%) to overseas, with Christchurch still being the origin for 32% of visitors; the North Island as a place of visitor origin halved to 8%, consistent with other South Island locality trends. The length of stay in the Park has also changed significantly, with greater numbers visiting for one day or less and fewer people now staying for longer periods of time. It is thought that this change reflects the intense nature of some more recently developed activities such as multi-sports, mountain running, mountain biking and kayaking and the likelihood that many people now have significant time constraints. This change in length of stay in the Park is consistent with that seen in other national parks, such as with climbing in Aoraki/Mount Cook National Park, especially evident there where air access is available.

Improved physical access via the upgraded State Highway 73 and changed rail services, increased availability of information on the Park and availability of accommodation in the area, has encouraged the public to visit and/or pass through the Park. Visitors arrive by road, rail and foot. State Highway 73 and the Midland

³ A nominal hut capacity can be calculated by multiplying the hut's sleeping capacity (see Table 7) by the number of nights per annum for which it is reasonable to expect the hut to be used (i.e. Saturday nights for weekends, other nights for longer weekends and public/education holidays, further nights over summer, lesser nights over winter).

Railway bisect the Park and visitors use many areas adjacent to these routes, including the number of picnic shelters and overnight camping sites available nearby. Private cars are the predominant (70%) means of access to the Park for both front-country and backcountry users. The service to Park visitors of the Trans Alpine day-time passenger train passing through the Park, is more about scenic enjoyment from the moving train, although some passengers do disembark at Arthur's Pass. Compare this with the evening passenger trains of the past and their frequent passenger drop-off points. Occasional excursion trains can deliver hundreds of passengers for a few hours at Arthur's Pass village. Any return to a more backcountry-friendly train service is unlikely given costs and the freight train demands on the Midland Railway. Public bus and shuttle services are now more frequent and set down and pick up people along State Highway 73 on request and are likely to continue as the predominant non-private car option. Air access is not a feature of the Park and is seldom even sought after by the public.

The location of State Highway 73 and the railway encourages use of the Park by people who are not experienced or physically fit trampers, but who do want to enjoy the Park. This has had a direct bearing on the siting of parking and foot access at selected locations close to the State Highway, including at Arthur's Pass village. The public are encouraged to visit all parts of the Park on foot and there is a range of walks, tracks and routes within the Park. A path for people with disabilities, suitable for wheelchairs, has been constructed, as well as a special walk for blind people.

Park roading is limited and is restricted to access to Hawdon Shelter and roadside car parks, amenity areas and camp sites. Unauthorised mountain biking is occurring in the Poulter valley. Because of the growth in the sport there are calls to allow this activity in the Park. Mountain biking opportunities outside the Park are extensive and increasing.

The increase in overseas visitors to New Zealand and to the Park, particularly "free independent travellers" is likely to continue, although the degree of increase may be affected by future energy costs. The expected increase may bring conflict with the national parks principle of preserving natural values, but any such conflict is likely to be limited to the "corridor" area where most visitation occurs.

Recent studies in New Zealand (see Kearsley et al, 1998, 1999 & 2001) have looked at front-country and backcountry recreational use. The effect of large increases in numbers of overseas visitors, in addition to generating front-country physical and social impacts, is leading to displacement of existing recreational use into and within backcountry areas, with resultant crowding and other perceived impacts. While the Park has experienced some localised pressure of this nature (e.g. on Avalanche Peak) it has not experienced the considerable displacement or other pressures seen on tracks such as the Great Walks.

A more probable cause of displacement in the Park's backcountry area is by multi-sport and its component activities on 'traditional' activities (e.g. tramping) as has occurred on the Minga-Deception track in the build-up to and on the days of the Coast to Coast event.

The Visitor Centre in Arthur's Pass village is the focus for visitor information and Park interpretation. Most public huts and shelters are established and maintained by the Department, but two public use huts (Barker and Waimakariri Falls) are operated by the Canterbury Mountaineering Club.

The Park is popular year-round. School use remains high, encouraged by the availability of accommodation and continuing acceptance of national parks as sites for outdoor education. The Arthur's Pass Outdoor Education Trust Lodge, school lodges in Arthur's Pass village and at Hawdon, and the Temple Basin lodges are the focus of school use in the Park.

Te Araroa Trust Inc. is developing the concept of "Te Araroa - The Long Pathway", a linked system of walking tracks the length of New Zealand. Te Araroa is proposed to pass through the Park along the Taramakau/Deception/Mingha valleys.

The easy access to the Park's mountainous environment, most particularly for day trips from Arthur's Pass village for walking, tramping, climbing or skiing, has seen this area have one of the highest fatality rates, both historically and recently, within the New Zealand backcountry. A reduced fatality rate is a priority for Department action.

2.5.2 Recreational Opportunity Settings

Providing for appropriate public recreational use is one of the principal functions of the Department, where that use is consistent with the preservation of the Park. In meeting the section 4(2)(e) National Parks Act principle of encouraging "...inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits..", the Department recognises that these are Park values, alongside the Park's natural values, that can be positively or negatively affected through the management of public use.

The Recreation Opportunity Spectrum (ROS) is a recreation planning method that is used to help identify the recreational opportunities which are managed to provide for particular Park values or recreational experiences. These values and experiences may include physical challenge, natural quiet, self-reliance and isolation. By providing a range of recreational opportunities within defined management settings, the public are able to choose an area of the Park that most closely matches the experience they wish to have.

The settings strongly influence the nature and standard of public facilities (e.g. huts and tracks) provided throughout the Park. They can also be used to ensure that concession activities are managed so as not to detract from the desired experiences of the public and to assist in the management of adverse effects (e.g. from vehicle activity), conflicts between public activities and in preserving natural values.

This ROS approach is set out in *The New Zealand Recreation Opportunity Spectrum Guidelines for Users* (1993), the *Recreation Strategy for Canterbury Conservancy* (1994) and the *Visitor Strategy* (1996).

Recreational opportunity settings appropriate for the Park, based on those in the above references, have been used in this plan. The settings are:

- Remote;
- Backcountry walk-in; and
- Backcountry accessible - motorised.

The ROS recreational opportunity settings description and criteria summary are set out in Table 5. The areas of the Park to which they relate are shown on Figures 4 and 4A within 6.3.2 Public Access and Use, which is the policy section that adopts the ROS system for this Park.

It is essential to understand that any national park is one part of a national system of public conservation and other recreational lands. Each park needs to be considered within the context of national recreational opportunities. Within Arthur's Pass National Park the focus should be on any opportunities that are unique to or nationally best represented within the Park, as highlighted by the identification in this Plan of the Park's values and the outcomes planned for the Park, so that across all national parks and other places a range of opportunities is provided. Where comparable experiences can be or are adequately provided for outside the Park, there will be a reduced need to provide for them inside the Park.

2.6 ADJOINING LANDS

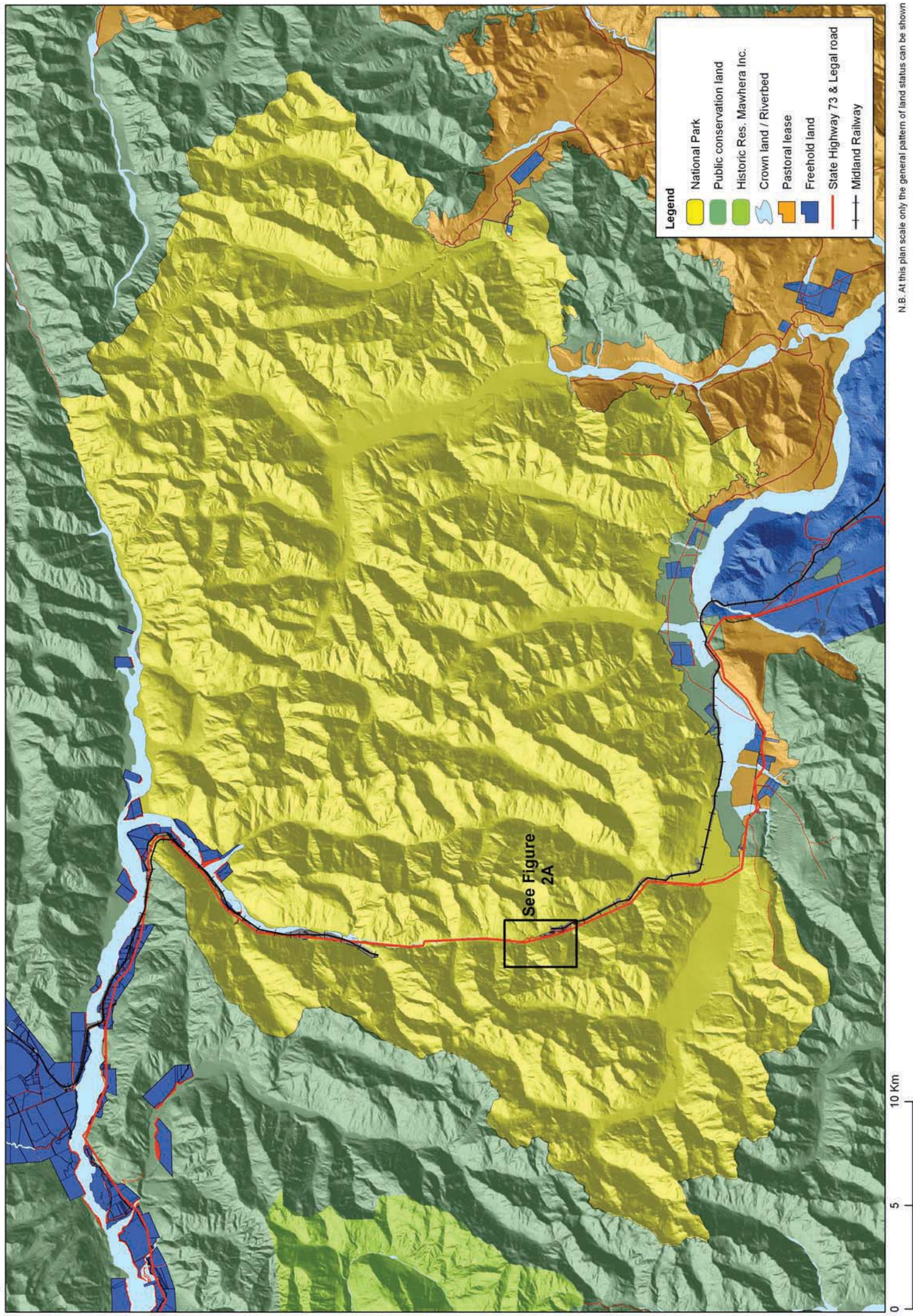
Land adjoining the Park is primarily public conservation land administered by the Department, along with Crown leasehold (pastoral lease) land. Other adjoining lands, of which there is a much smaller amount, include railway land, freehold land and legal road (see Figures 2 & 2A). Uses on adjoining lands can directly influence the values and public enjoyment of the Park, so co-operation and good working relationships with councils, owners and lessees is necessary to ensure that the integrity of the Park is maintained.

Within the adjoining public conservation lands and to a lesser extent the pastoral lease lands, there are considerable recreational opportunities similar to those in the Park as well as opportunities for aircraft use, off-road vehicle and mountain bike use and recreation with dogs.

Figure 2A: Status of adjoining lands



Figure 2: Status of adjoining lands



N.B. At this plan scale only the general pattern of land status can be shown

**Insert Figure 2 – Status of Adjoining Lands, Arthur’s
Pass village**

A3 map, two page number

2.7 THE PARK IN THE REGIONAL AND NATIONAL CONTEXT

2.7.1 The Regional Context

Historically the Pass itself reflects the changing modes and imprints of human transportation and trade in the area, ranging from early Māori in search of pounamu, to European coaching, railway and roading. The Pass is the only alpine highway in the country that allows motorists, train passengers and walkers, amongst others, to easily witness such a stunning change in plant diversity, from beech forest to alpine tussock grasslands, to rata kamahi forest, to podocarp forest. The Park's proximity to Christchurch and the West Coast makes it a popular playground for trampers, hunters, and climbers.

The Park, together with the Craigieburn and Lake Sumner Forest Parks, the Korowai/Torlesse Tussocklands Park and other adjoining public conservation areas, covers extensive portions of Canterbury and West Coast mountain lands. These areas share features such as physical similarity and complementary track and hut systems. Ease of access varies as do management objectives, but together they provide a significant recreation resource. There are several tramping/climbing routes which link the Park to adjacent conservation lands, e.g. "The Three Pass Trip" (Harman, Whitehorn and Browning/Noti Raureka) to the west, Harper Pass to the Hurunui catchment to the north and Sphinx Saddle to the Avoca catchment to the south.

The Park provides a significant scenic backdrop and opportunities for casual forest-edge recreation. In addition, entry by foot is available from many points, including from Craigieburn and Lake Sumner Forest Parks and the Taipo Conservation Area, which have common boundaries with the National Park.

The Park includes most of the headwaters of the Waimakariri and Otira Rivers and some tributaries of the Taramakau River system. Industry, farming and mahinga kai in the region benefits from the stability of the catchment and high water quality in the rivers. The quality of the recreation experience in the upper Waimakariri Basin and downriver also depends on catchment protection.

Within the Park is the water supply catchment for Arthur's Pass village and the upper part of the catchment for Otira village.

The Park and local facilities provide employment which benefits a number of businesses in Arthur's Pass village and beyond. Along State Highway 73 from Porters Pass towards Arthur's Pass there are now accommodation facilities at Castle Hill, Flock Hill, Grasmere, Cora Lynn and Bealey, providing a wide range of accommodation styles, refreshments and activities.

West of the Park there are also several facilities, at Lake Brunner, Jacksons and Otira.

All these developments directly or indirectly encourage public use of the Park.

The *Proposed Selwyn District Plan* (2000) has provisions recognising the landscape and natural features of the Park, the role of Arthur's Pass village as a "front door" to the Park, potential effects of Arthur's Pass village and the need for a comprehensive development plan before land is re-zoned for business development within the village. The *Westland District Plan* (2002) zones as "rural" all areas adjoining the Park, including Otira village in recognition of the natural hazard risk that surrounds it. General rural activities are permitted within the rural zone, but there is little or no recognition of any scenic or other relationship between these activities and the Park.

2.7.2 The National Context

The Park contributes immensely to retaining natural, historical and recreational diversity both nationally and internationally.

The Park is of considerable importance for scientific studies, as a habitat for threatened species, for its geological features and for its Waimakariri River headwaters. The environmental range from eastern grasslands, through beech forests to sub-alpine and alpine communities and western rainforests, is best represented within the spectrum of New Zealand's national parks by this Park.

Most national parks have some of the public use attributes found at Arthur's Pass. The Park's more distinctive public use features however, are its closeness to large and smaller population centres, the relative ease of access to its "remote" settings, the predominantly low level of obvious concessionaire development and activity, the dominance of walking as the means of access and the high degree of natural quiet, all despite the Park being bisected by State Highway 73, the Midland Railway and other developments along the Aickens to Cora Lynn/Bealey Spur corridor.

2.8 FURTHER INFORMATION

Other publications are available which provide additional information about the Park and the Arthur's Pass area in general. Some of these are now out of print and will require referencing through libraries.

Brailly, S. Holder, K. & Wilson, A. [198-]. *Arthur's Pass National Park*. Designprint Press, Christchurch.

Dennis, A.D. *Arthur's Pass National Park, 1929-1979, The First Fifty Years*. Arthur's Pass National Park Board, Auckland.

Denis, A.D. & Pearson, J. [Ed], 1986. *The Story of Arthur's Pass National Park*. Arthur's Pass National Park Board, Christchurch.

Kates, G. 2004. *Arthur's Pass, a Guide for Mountaineers*. New Zealand Alpine Club, Christchurch.

Logan, R. 1987. *Waimakariri : Canterbury's river of cold rushing water : an illustrated history*. Logan Publishing, Christchurch.

Thom, D. 1987. *Heritage - The Parks of the People*. Lansdowne Press, Auckland

3. Management Issues, Resolving Conflicts and Identification of Places

3.1 MANAGEMENT ISSUES

Arthur's Pass National Park is a large area of diversity and variety, offering a range of educational, recreational and other opportunities.

Past experience of management of the Park, and public comment received prior to the preparation of this Plan, indicate that there are a number of issues which this Plan has addressed.

- Preservation and Use

National parks are subject to two potentially conflicting sets of values. One arises from the status of national parks (and of the larger nature and national reserves) as the icons of New Zealand's protected areas. Parliament expects a high degree of care in the interactions of people and their activities with the Park's natural, historic and cultural values. The other set of values arises from pressure for use and development, sometimes commercial in nature and at times unrelated to public appreciation or preservation of the Park (e.g. power transmission lines) and sometimes for public use (e.g. sports events).

This issue of how preservation and use should inter-relate is in part inherent within the National Parks Act 1980. The Act requires that parks be managed primarily for the purpose of preserving their natural state and, where consistent with preservation of natural values, for public entry and access to enable inspiration, enjoyment, recreation and other benefits. Situations do arise where these aims are at odds. The purpose of this Plan is to help resolve this tension.

Most of the Park is self-preserving because of the nature of the environment, but some of it is sensitive and fragile; other areas are less so and can be accessed relatively easily. The preservation of the Park's cultural values, for both Ngāi Tahu and all New Zealanders who treasure the Park, is a harder management task. Some areas of the Park along the State Highway 73 corridor are very accessible and are experiencing public pressure. The *New Zealand Tourism Strategy 2010* (2001) predicts a national average growth rate for tourist numbers of 4.5% per annum for the period 2000-2010, which is consistent with recent growth rates at the Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre.

Sometimes actually preserving natural values can have adverse effects on other natural values and on public use, such as when a large project like that for kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet in the Hawdon and Poulter valleys generates considerable activity in the valleys.

- Threatened Species

There are nationally threatened species within the Park. The Department's national priorities for the preservation of such species do not, in all cases, include programmes within the Park. Partly in response to this tight priority setting some community programmes have emerged. Guidance for the Department and community projects is addressed.

- Changing Public Use Patterns

Should we provide for changing public use patterns (e.g. the increased interest in multi-sport and competitive sporting activities) or should we retain the 'traditional' activity base of largely self-reliant tramping and climbing? This question and the issue of potential displacement of traditional activities are ones that the Plan addresses.

- Introduced Plants And Animals

Many introduced plants and animals that are or would be detrimental to the Park's indigenous values are present in the Park or at risk of being introduced. The National Parks Act 1980 requires that introduced species be exterminated as far as possible. Nevertheless, it will be necessary to consider which management approach is appropriate for each species given the context of the Park's values and the actual or potential threat of the species, and the resources available. Sports fish and wild animals also have recreational values and their management may require consideration of sports fishing opportunities and of recreational hunting as an animal control measure.

- Temple Basin

Temple Basin is an important area of the Park for a number of reasons. It is a fragile environment which is subject to fairly intensive year-round use for a variety of activities, ranging from skiing, snow and rock climbing to the viewing of scenery and studying of alpine biota. The majority of development is related to the use of the area as a club concessionaire-operated ski-field. There is some uncertainty about the future viability of the ski-field.

As a relatively sensitive area of the Park it is important to identify clear guidance for the protection of the area and to ensure that any adverse effects from any proposed facility changes or changes in the natural characteristics of the area can be adequately dealt with.

- Vehicle Use And Mountain Bikes

The *General Policy for National Parks* (2005) confirmed the previous general policy stance on minimising adverse effects of vehicles on national park values. In a change from previous policy the use of non-motorised mountain bikes on roads and routes within a national park may be approved under certain circumstances and subject to certain conditions. The use of such bikes within the Poulter valley is addressed in this Plan.

- Levels Of Concessionaire Use

The Park does not have the amount of concessionaire use that exists in some other national parks. There is however, concessionaire activity ranging from short-period, major annual events such as the Coast to Coast race, ongoing almost historic

activity, such as the Temple Basin ski field, and regular and comparatively low-key guiding operations for nature appreciation and/or tramping.

In accordance with section 47(7) of the National Parks Act the approval of this Plan has had regard to any relevant concessions for the time being in force.

There has been some pressure for the development of huts to be used by concessionaires only, for remote camp-site equipment storage and toilets and for further endurance sports events. This issue is addressed in this Plan.

- Aircraft Use

Aircraft use within the Park has primarily been limited to Park services such as Park management, search and rescue and scientific study. Additional uses have included some utility servicing, safety back-up for sports events and a one-off less-abled access occasion for the Temple Basin ski field's 75th anniversary in 2004. Although there has been some pressure to allow scenic landings or positioning of recreationalists there has been even stronger pressure to retain the Park free of all but essential aircraft use. Retaining the present quiet nature of the Park and ensuring that public enjoyment is not marred by the presence of aircraft is highly valued by current Park users.

- Research and Information Needs

The Park has a strong association with research, both specific to Park management and for scientific and conservation values generally. Research and monitoring needs are still strong to guide future Park management and national conservation programmes for both natural values and public use and enjoyment. As far as possible the Plan has identified and made provision for these needs.

- Aickens To Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor

The Park encompasses and surrounds a nationally important east/west link for a range of public service utilities - road, rail, power and telecommunications. The Arthur's Pass and Otira villages and many Park and other public facilities have developed alongside these. The utilities will continue to change in their nature and use and will require maintenance. The growth of public use is currently matching national tourist growth projections and facilities need to continue to be provided. In balancing the requirements of the Park, the utility services and the public facilities, Park managers must follow the principles of the National Parks Act and consider the legislation governing the utilities.

- Global Challenges

Two global impacts may challenge Park use and management in the future. The ten-year life of this Plan will at least allow the issues to become clearer even if the impacts themselves have not begun to have full effect.

Climate change will likely affect snow- and ice-dependent activities as well as public use and river protection works, by generating higher average river flows. In the east climate change will increase the fire risk and make fire suppression more difficult. Biodiversity values may also be affected with animal species, both indigenous and introduced, responding more quickly to ecological change than will plant species and vegetation.

Energy cost rises will see travel becoming more expensive, both internationally and domestically and will lead to more expensive goods and services. Potential effects are likely to be higher management and public facility provision costs for the Park, changes to public use patterns, a slowing or a reduction in tourism growth and less traffic on State Highway 73.

Park management will need to monitor these challenges and respond accordingly when considering biodiversity actions, public facilities and in considering concessionaire activities or proposals.

3.2 RESOLVING CONFLICTS

Where conflicts currently exist or may emerge in the future between the different values of the Park or different uses of the Park they are now, or will be, dealt with in one of the following ways:

- through the preparation of this Plan, which involved the integrated consideration of all issues and the development of objectives, policies and methods that avoid conflict with each other;
- through implementation of the Plan, which requires that all policy sections be read with consideration of all other sections; see the 6.1 Introduction to section 6 Park Objectives, Policies and Outcomes;
- through the use of statutory or Plan-specified processes for identifying and resolving potential conflicts, e.g. requiring assessments of environmental effects, plus 5.1.1 Treaty Relationship and 6.4.3 Concessions General.
- through the application of the existing Park Bylaws (see Appendix A) and/or the seeking of additional bylaws (e.g. as in 6.3.6.1 regarding mountain biking).

3.3 IDENTIFICATION OF PLACES

The *General Policy for National Parks* requires the specification of “outcomes at places” for the various Park values and activities. In this Plan “places” have been dealt with throughout the policy sections in several ways, each being appropriate to the policy issues being dealt with, by:

- policy sections that deal with the Park as a whole (a “place”):
 - within which various statutory and other processes will determine localities where action may be required from time to time (e.g. as in 6.2.5 Introduced Animals and 6.2.6 Introduced Plants); or
 - that have Park-wide policy, but also record specific locality (site and area) “places” (e.g. as in 6.2.4 Historic Features and Memorials); or
 - that have policies applying to the whole Park (e.g. as in 6.4.8 Aircraft); or
 - that while applicable across the whole Park, also divide the Park into various zones (e.g. as in 6.3.2 Public Access and Use and the recreational opportunity settings (Figures 4 and 4A) within that section);

- identifying a particular-issue “place” that is most relevant to and which is dealt with as a sub-section to a main policy section, namely 6.2.2.1 Hawdon/Poulter Valleys and the Kākāriki Karaka/Orange-fronted Parakeet Programme; and
- a specific “place” with its complex multi-issues, namely section 7 The Aickens to Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor.

4. Combined Park Objectives

The following objectives come from sections 6.2.1 Preservation and Heritage Objectives, 6.3.1 Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment Objectives, 6.4.1 Concessions and Other Uses Objectives and 7.2.1 Corridor Objectives. They encompass the overall approach to management of the Park, as implemented by the various policies and methods to achieve the stated outcomes.

Preservation and Heritage

- 1. Preservation of the Park's scenery, ecological systems and natural features by the natural processes inherent to the Park.**
- 2. Application of management intervention only where human-induced threats arise that will affect threatened species, critical habitats and special sites, and where resources are available to deal with these threats.**
- 3. Preservation of the historic physical evidence of human endeavour associated with the study and enjoyment of the Park's natural features and with travelling through the Southern Alps / Kā Tiritiri o Te Moana.**

Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment

- 4. The provision and maintenance of camp sites, amenity areas and short walks alongside State Highway 73 and other road access principally for road and rail travellers passing through or briefly visiting the Park or staying in accommodation outside the Park.**
- 5. The provision and maintenance of overnight accommodation and shelter on the main valley tramping tracks principally for family and school groups and trampers with limited experience.**
- 6. The provision and maintenance of overnight accommodation or shelter away from the main valleys principally for the safety of experienced Park users.**
- 7. The management of all tributary catchments to the east of the Poulter River valley, including the Thompson Stream catchment, as a more remote area, primarily without huts, in which Park users should be fully self-reliant for accommodation and shelter.**
- 8. The use of the Park by public who know, appreciate and respect the values of the Park, and whose use is with knowledge of and respect for the natural hazards that exist.**

Concessions and Other Uses

- 9. The acknowledging of the Ngāi Tahu history of customary use within the Park and the finding of ways for this use to continue in harmony with national park values.**
- 10. The setting of high standards for Park preservation when allowing essential regional facilities that pass through or are located within the Park and for the use of stone and gravel from within the Park.**

11. The activities that concessionaires offer enhance their clients understanding and experience of national park values.
12. The expansion of knowledge gained through research in and of the Park and its natural, cultural, historic and public use values.
13. The maintenance of a high degree of natural quiet within the Park and especially an absence of aircraft noise.
14. The avoidance of activities that do not need to occur within the Park and that are not directly related to national park values.

The Aickens to Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor

15. A corridor where the Park's natural features (including landscape and natural darkness) remain dominant.
16. A corridor where indigenous species and ecosystems are protected and particular values (rata/kamahi forest, whio/blue duck, roroa/great spotted kiwi, Cockayne transects) receive specific attention.
17. Recognition of the scenic wonder of crossing the Southern Alps/Ka Tiritiri o te Moana and passing from Canterbury to West Coast landscapes.
18. Recognition of the modern-day transport and utility modes through the Pass and their development history right back to the pounamu ara hikoi.
19. High quality utility design and maintenance that is consistent with preservation of national park values.
20. The provision of utilities to the villages and ski field in accordance with approved concessions.
21. Community involvement in respecting and caring for national park values.
22. An Arthur's Pass village and Bealey Spur settlement that blend well with the Park, with the village being a significant 'front door' to the Park.

5. Treaty of Waitangi

5.1 INTRODUCTION

This section sits in front of the other policy sections of the management plan, in recognition of the Treaty of Waitangi relationship between the Crown, through the Department, and Ngāi Tahu. The management of the Park's values must be from the bi-cultural perspective, in accordance with the Crown's recognition of the Treaty.

5.1.1 Treaty Relationship

Policy

5.1.1

To manage Arthur's Pass National Park in a manner that gives effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, to the extent that the principles of the Treaty are not clearly inconsistent with the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980, *Deed of Settlement* 1997 and Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act .

Explanation

5.1.1 - Section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987 requires the National Parks Act 1980 to be interpreted and administered to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi, at least to the extent that the principles are not clearly inconsistent with the provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 (*Ngāi Tahu Māori Trust Board v Director-General of Conservation [1995] 3NZLR 553*).

The Department's guiding principles in regard to the Treaty of Waitangi and its principles are set out in Part 2 of the *General Policy for National Parks*. The *Deed of Settlement* 1997 and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 also provide specific obligations for the Department. These specific obligations are noted where relevant, in policies, explanations and methods throughout this Management Plan. Method number 1 below, which relates to section 4 of the Conservation Act, applies throughout the Plan, but to avoid repetition is listed once below.

The Department recognises the mana and tāngata whenua status of Ngāi Tahu, whose rohe (tribal region) includes the Park and ensures where appropriate, that Ngāi Tahu are actively involved in the protection of their taonga within the Park. Consultation from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect iwi interests is essential. It is important to establish and maintain a close relationship with Ngāi Tahu and ensure that their concerns are understood and taken into account. The Department seeks to achieve this through a range of mechanisms, examples of which include consultation with Ngāi Tahu on the Department's annual business plan and regular Rōpū Kaitiaki meetings with tāngata whenua (see 2.2 Ngai Tahu Values Relating to the Park).

Consultation with Ngāi Tahu will be principally with the tāngata whenua. In addition, the Department is required to consult with Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, the tribal body of Ngāi Tahu, over any *Deed of Settlement* related matters.

Significant values have been identified and have been addressed through specific policies and methods of this Plan.

One matter not addressed elsewhere is the recognition of additional Māori place names by the New Zealand Geographic Board, with Kaimatau (see 2.2 Ngāi Tahu Values Relating to the Park) being a contender for recognition.

Methods

5.1.1

- 1. Actively consult and work with tāngata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values.**
- 2. Support the consideration of Ngāi Tahu in seeking the recognition of ancient Maori place names within the Park, from the New Zealand Geographic Board.**

6. Park Objectives, Policies and Outcomes

6.1 INTRODUCTION

Policy

6.1.1

Within this Plan the words ‘will’, ‘should’ and ‘may’ have the following meanings:

- i. policies or methods where legislation provides no discretion for decision-making or a deliberate decision has been made by the New Zealand Conservation Authority to direct decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions ‘will’ be undertaken;
- ii. policies or methods that carry with them a strong expectation of outcome, without diminishing the constitutional role of the Minister and other decision-makers, state that a particular action or actions ‘should’ be undertaken; and
- iii. policies or methods intended to allow flexibility in decision-making, state that a particular action or actions ‘may’ be undertaken.

Explanation

The policies in this Plan have been prepared in terms of the National Parks Act 1980, the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005), legislation listed in section 1.2 and the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000). The *General Policy* has been applied and where necessary its application to Arthur’s Pass National Park has been specified, expanded or interpreted.

Whilst individual policies may be read in isolation, it is necessary to read them together with their associated method statements and within the context of the Plan as a whole to gain a comprehensive understanding and to note that all policies in this Plan will be implemented and applied consistently with all other policies in the Plan.

The above conventions, with respect to the Department’s implementing policies or methods and in accordance with Policy 1 of the *General Policy*, have been used within this Plan, and the following matters are to be noted.

1. When the term ‘should’ is used it is anticipated that there will only be exceptional circumstances where the outcome will differ from that expressed in the policies or methods. While it is essential to acknowledge the discretionary nature of decision making, this plan and its policies and methods are designed to give as much certainty as possible to management practice.

If there are exceptional circumstances the decision must be made by the Conservator or another person higher in the delegation chain.

2. The Minister of Conservation's decision making powers are in most cases delegated to Departmental managers. When that is the case, that person acts as the Minister's delegate.

The Director-General's decision making powers are also in most cases delegated.

A delegate may, if he or she thinks the decision calls for the exercise of any of the powers, functions or duties at a higher level because of the nature of the issues involved, refer that matter to a higher level of authority for consideration and/or decision.

A delegation does not preclude the Minister or Director-General from making the decision if s/he wishes to. This also applies to any level of delegation, other than the lowest level.

3. Where references are made to Department or non-Department policy documents (e.g. *Himalayan thar control plan* (1993); *Canterbury Regional Pest Management Strategy 2005-2015* (2005)), the reference should be taken to also apply to any reviews of these documents during the ten-year life of this Plan, to the extent that such reviews do not generate policy that would be inconsistent with the objectives and policies of this Plan.

6.2 PRESERVATION AND HERITAGE

6.2.1 Preservation and Heritage Objectives

1. **Preservation of the Park's scenery, ecological systems and natural features by the natural processes inherent to the Park.**
2. **Application of management intervention only where human-induced threats arise that will affect threatened species, critical habitats and special sites, and where resources are available to deal with these threats.**
3. **Preservation of the historic physical evidence of human endeavour associated with the study and enjoyment of the Park's natural features and with travelling through the Southern Alps / Kā Tiritiri o Te Moana.**

Index to Preservation and Heritage policy and outcomes sections:		
6.2.2	Indigenous Plants and Animals	51
	6.2.2.1 Hawdon/Poulter Valleys and the Kākāriki Karaka/Orange-fronted Parakeet Programme	56
6.2.3	Geological Features	58
6.2.4	Historic Features and Memorials	60
6.2.5	Introduced Animals	64
6.2.6	Introduced Plants	72
6.2.7	Natural Hazards	77
6.2.8	Fire Control	78
6.2.9	Boundaries and Park Additions	80
6.2.10	Preservation and Heritage Outcomes	83

6.2.2 Indigenous Plants and Animals

Policies

6.2.2(a)

To preserve indigenous plants and animals as far as possible in their natural state.

6.2.2(b)

To take all practicable measures, in accordance with the Department's national policies on threatened species, to protect threatened indigenous plants and animals and their habitats.

6.2.2(c)

Where an activity in the Park may potentially affect land or freshwater invertebrate habitats then consideration of approval for that activity should involve a survey and investigation for threatened invertebrate species.

6.2.2(d)

To encourage and support community and other initiatives for the protection of threatened species, preferably where the initiative is based on good science, methodologies and monitoring and any necessary legislative approvals have been obtained.

6.2.2(e)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with taonga species and, when managing indigenous plants and animals, have particular regard to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for cultural materials, freshwater fisheries and culling of species.

Explanation

6.2.2(a) - Preservation of indigenous (native) plants and animals, as far as possible, except where the New Zealand Conservation Authority otherwise determines, is a requirement of the National Parks Act 1980 (section 4(2)(b)).

To a large extent, the survival of species of indigenous plants and animals depends upon the good health of their habitats (see 6.2.5 Introduced Animals, 6.2.6 Introduced Plants and 6.2.8 Fire Control, as well as the protection provisions of other sections). Where resources do not permit the maintenance of the good health of habitats then it follows that the Park's health will decline.

Any removal of or wilful damage to plants is an offence (section 60(1)(d) National Parks Act 1980) unless the approval of the Minister of Conservation has been obtained in advance. Any disturbance, trapping, taking, hunting or killing of indigenous fauna requires the approval of the Minister of Conservation and the Director-General of Conservation, in terms of the requirements of both section 5 National Parks Act 1980 and section 53(1) Wildlife Act 1953 respectively. Indigenous fauna includes bird, fish, reptile and invertebrate life.

While the Park is the type locality for many species the “localities” are often general in nature and there are no known detailed localities that require specific protection.

The “Cockayne Transects” on Arthur’s Pass need ongoing protection (see 7.2.2 Indigenous Plants and Animals).

Preservation cannot be an absolute. Sometimes vegetation needs to be cut, such as along tracks or to provide a site for a public facility. In the course of cutting vegetation or controlling or eradicating exotics (see 6.2.6 Introduced Plants), specimens of indigenous animals may become casualties and adverse effects on native plants and habitats should be avoided. Consent must be sought where applicable, in terms of sections 5(1) and 5(2) National Parks Act and the Wildlife Act 1953.

Climate change is likely to affect indigenous plants and animals. Information gathered on effects within the Park could assist in developing national responses to climate change and some mitigation matters may be possible, e.g. increased animal pest control to increase forest biomass and carbon accumulation.

For policy relating to the collection or cutting of indigenous species as part of an approved programme of scientific research, see 6.4.4 Research and Information Needs.

Ngāi Tahu traditional use of indigenous plants and animals is addressed in 6.4.2 Ngāi Tahu Customary Use.

6.2.2(b), (c) & (d) - Within the Park the primary risk to threatened plant species is where they are affected by introduced animals, fire and public facility and concessions developments.

The lack of data to confirm if the Park’s land and freshwater invertebrates may include threatened species suggests a survey and investigation approach should be taken when an activity may potentially affect invertebrate habitats.

Threatened species are now managed in a national context, with individual species recovery plans¹ and most national resources targeted to particular areas, although conservancies can undertake local programmes for species. Several species in the Park are affected by the need to target scarce management resources and all are facing a nationwide decline in their range.

For *Pittosporum patulum* the recovery plan (Townsend, 1999) requires surveys (including of a previous Cox River valley survey site), monitoring and maintenance of populations within each relevant conservancy. Within the Park, adult plants have been lost through possum browse and saplings and seedlings survive only where there is possum control undertaken for other species protection.

¹ Species recovery plans (referenced in the text) for wildlife are prepared in accordance with the Minister’s responsibilities under the Wildlife Act 1953. The Act does not require a public process for plan preparation but there is input from non-Department persons, including from Ngāi Tahu for taonga species (see Appendix C). The plans, including any amendments or replacements, are public documents. For effective wildlife management the plans need to be easily changeable in response to new information; this can result in the published plans not always recording the latest management objectives, although in these cases an addendum should be available. Species recovery plans for plants are prepared in a similar way, and are also public documents and changeable, under the Conservation Act 1987 and the National Parks Act 1980. Policy 4.1(c)ii) of the *General Policy for National Parks* requires integration, as far as possible, of relevant national species recovery and management objectives with actions for the management of threats to habitats and ecosystems in national parks.

For kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet, see 6.2.2.1 for information on how this threatened species population is being managed.

For mohua/yellowhead nationally, populations are being maintained in Southland and elsewhere and through the Hurunui Mainland Island Project just to the north of the Park (O'Donnell, Roberts & Lyall, 2002). Recovery plan priorities are to manage mohua within chosen mainland forests, mainly through the control of introduced predators, to establish populations on predator-free islands and to potentially develop a captive breeding and release capability. As at the date of approval of this Plan, the Park is not a priority national site for mohua recovery plan action. Nevertheless, mohua should benefit from the kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet programme (see 6.2.2.1) since they share the same habitat and are subject to the same predators and this may secure its survival within the Park.

For roroa/great spotted kiwi the Arthur's Pass community's stoat-trapping and monitoring programme in roroa territory is a commendable initiative that may reduce the population decline and assist other species until more is known about threats to the species and/or more effective control techniques are developed. The programme is consistent with the kiwi recovery plan (Robertson, 1996), which otherwise is not targeting resources to areas within the Park. Translocation of breeding birds and re-introduction of juvenile birds once they are more able to defend themselves from predators, is a possible option for the Park, but one that would need action within the recovery plan context.

For whio/blue duck the Park is not a priority national site for recovery plan action (Adams, Cunningham, Molloy & Phillipson, 1997). The Coast to Coast concessionaire's funding for stoat control to protect whio/blue duck in the Mingha and Deception valleys is a commendable local initiative with good signs of success and like the roroa programme above, may assist the species survival in the Park.

Neither kea nor kaka receives any species management action within the Park, although some community relations work does occur for kea to minimise the destructive side-effects of people feeding them.

For long-finned eels the Park remains a headwaters refuge, without any need for active management.

6.2.2(e) - Ngāi Tahu has a cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association with indigenous plants and animals. The Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 recognises this relationship in sections 287 to 296 "Taonga species". Schedules 97 and 98 of the Act list those indigenous plants and animals that were included in the settlement as taonga species (see Appendix C).

With respect to taonga species, including those species subject to recovery plans or species recovery groups, under section 293 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Minister of Conservation is required to advise Ngāi Tahu in advance of any reviews or preparations of statutory or non-statutory management documents. The Minister is required to consult and have particular regard to the views of Ngāi Tahu when making policy decisions concerning the protection, management or conservation of taonga species.

Under section 294 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Director-General of Conservation, in respect of any taonga species that is or becomes subject to a recovery plan or species recovery group, is required to provide Ngāi Tahu with copies of the proceedings and publications relating to the species. The Director-General is required to consult with and have particular regard to the views of Ngāi Tahu when making policy decisions concerning the protection, management or conservation of all taonga species subject to a species recovery group. Species recovery groups relevant to the Park, that Ngāi Tahu are represented on, include those for kiwi, whio, kākāriki karaka, mohua, weka and koaro.

There is acceptance within Ngāi Tahu that threatened species management priorities may mean a reduction in population size within, or a loss of some species from the Park, while those species are protected at other localities. For the future however, there remains the hope of re-establishing those populations and species within the Park.

In addition to these provisions, there are other species that are of special significance to Ngāi Tahu that may not be included in schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998. The Department should, in accordance with section 4 of the Conservation Act 1987, where appropriate and to the fullest extent practicable, take active steps to protect the interests of Ngāi Tahu in these other species.

Methods

6.2.2(a)

- 1. Continue to apply the habitat and species protection methods set out in sections 6.2.5 Introduced Animals, 6.2.6 Introduced Plants and 6.2.8 Fire Control, as well as in the protection provisions of other sections.**
- 2. Indigenous plants that have been grown from seed or cuttings collected in the Park and in the vicinity of the Park may be planted in the Park (see 7.2.7 Landscape Management).**
- 3. For methods associated with the collection or disturbance of specimens as part of an approved programme of scientific research see 6.4.4 Research and Information Needs.**
- 4. For the protection of the Cockayne Transects see Policy 7.2.2(b).**
- 5. Monitor climate change effects on indigenous plants and animals, and contribute to developing and implementing the Department's national responses to changes where practical.**

6.2.2(b), (c) & (d)

- 1. Consent may be granted for the trimming or cutting of indigenous vegetation where required for threatened species management programmes, provided that an environmental impact assessment has been undertaken and identified protection procedures have been complied with.**
- 2. Records should be kept as far as possible of the distribution of threatened plants and animals, so that changes can be monitored and the location of populations of such species can be avoided when providing public facilities and services or considering concession applications.**

3. Undertake threatened species management in accordance with national priorities which may, in time, involve the reintroduction of species once effective techniques for predator control can be applied.
4. Ensure that threatened species recovery plans, including amendments and replacements, are readily available to the public.
5. Consult with relevant concessionaires where a proposed amendment to a threatened species recovery plan listed in this Plan will change the conditions of a concession.
6. Work with the community to identify opportunities for assistance with threatened species protection, and where opportunities arise, to:
 - i. give support to community efforts where practicable
 - ii. encourage best practice in any work undertaken;
 - iii. ensure any required permissions are obtained;
 - iv. ensure no adverse effects on the Park's natural values; and
 - v. ensure that public safety is assured.

6.2.2(e)

Consult with tāngata whenua and, where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to indigenous plants and animals. For all Deed of Settlement matters both tāngata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act mentioned in policy 6.2.2(e).

6.2.2.1 Hawdon and Poulter Valleys and the Kākāriki Karaka/Orange-Fronted Parakeet Programme

Policies

6.2.2.1(a)

To respond to predator eruptions within the Hawdon and Poulter valleys' beech forests for the primary purpose of protecting Kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet within its current environment.

6.2.2.1(b)

To undertake the threatened species programme in a manner that minimises impacts on other National Park values, but recognising that the survival of the managed threatened species is paramount.

Explanation

6.2.2.1(a) & (b) - The Hawdon/Poulter valleys programme is part of a national project, currently called Operation Ark and designed to protect mohua/yellowhead, kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet and whio/blue duck at eleven localities within the South Island. It includes protecting threatened species within their current environment rather than transferring them to 'refuge' localities or captive situations, although the latter has also occurred. The Hawdon/Poulter programme area (see Figure 4) is primarily for kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet, with its intensity largely governed by the incidence of beech forest mast (flowering and seeding) years and the consequent eruption of introduced predators (*Operation ark - operational plan for the Hawdon and Poulter valleys, Canterbury 2005/06 Version 2.0* (2005) - subsequently amended).

Programmed work involves baseline research on species and predator control techniques, mohua and kākāriki karaka population and nest monitoring, egg transfers to secure hatching units outside the Park and the subsequent release into the wild of juvenile birds, initially onto predator-free Chalky Island in Fiordland. Intense trapping and ground poisoning of predators is also occurring. Aerial poisoning operations, subject to resource consent, would be activated when monitoring detects a consistent widespread rat increase across the programme area that cannot be realistically controlled by ground operations.

Future work may involve an increase in the amount of ATV traffic in the valleys. Purpose-built accommodation and work-base facilities may be required in the Poulter valley, possibly in association with the Trust/Poulter Hut on its current or another site which could be designated primarily for use by programme staff.

So far the programme has resulted in, most importantly, a surviving kākāriki karaka population, a mohua population that may just be surviving despite no direct programme assistance, and anecdotal reporting of an improvement in the overall "dawn chorus", i.e. bird populations, within the valleys. This in turn has led to an increase and change in type of public use, mainly in the Hawdon valley, as people with a particular interest in birds come to visit and stay at Hawdon Hut.

Seeking the resource consent for an aerial 1080 poison bait drop raised some public and adjoining landowner concerns related to poisoning of non-target species, such as deer.

The programme builds on previous work that has included the use of 1080 in the 1960s and 1970s to control possums, stoat trapping begun in 1989 and intensified since 1999, and rat trapping from 2003.

Methods

6.2.2.1(a) & (b)

- 1. Continue the programme.**
- 2. Follow approved best practices for predator control work.**
- 3. Undertake public information and mitigation measures, including:**
 - i. maintaining information panels near Hawdon Shelter and at Casey Hut to explain the threatened species programme to the public and advise of poison and trap lines and their markers;**
 - ii. remedial work and measures such as bridging to avoid adverse effects where ATVs cross streams;**
 - iii. maintaining clear distinctions between trap/poison line markers and any tramping track/route markers;**
 - iv. minimising ATV and helicopter use, where practicable, particularly during weekends and public holidays,**
 - v. mark the tramping track up the Hawdon valley to avoid the ATV track and trap/poison lines; and**
 - vi. applying the following ATV use guidelines (see 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles, Method 6.3.6(b) 4):**
 - (a) keep ATV use to a single main track in the Hawdon valley;**
 - (b) keep ATV use to the ex-4WD track in the Poulter valley but also use a secondary true-left valley track if essential;**
 - (c) utilise bare-gravel active-riverbed routes where possible; and**
 - (d) no ATV use within the Hawdon valley upstream of East Hawdon Stream and in the Poulter valley upstream of Trust/Poulter Hut and Thompson Stream**
- 4. Locate purpose-built facilities for programme worker accommodation and equipment storage as required within the Poulter valley, to be removed when no longer required.**
- 5. If suitable for the programme, manage Trust/Poulter Hut primarily as a management-purposes hut, on its current or another site, with public use directed to other huts in the valley (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities).**
- 6. Maintain a clear position that any adverse effects on deer of poisoning operations for bird predator control, are very much secondary to the protection of indigenous threatened species and the requirements of the National Parks Act.**
- 7. Continue to seek Resource Management Act consents for aerial 1080 poison or other toxin use when needed to control widespread predator eruptions.**

6.2.3 Geological Features

Policies

6.2.3(a)

To encourage the public recognition and understanding of geological and landform features within the Park

6.2.3(b)

To preserve in their natural state the fossil and geothermal features within the Park.

6.2.3(c)

To encourage non-impactive study methods and require that permission be obtained in accordance with the National Parks Act for any scientific or other collection of fossils.

6.2.3(d)

To encourage or undertake non-impactive recording and research of the algae, chemical and other physical characteristics of hot springs and seepages within the Park.

6.2.3(e)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance, and give effect to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for historic resources.

Explanation

6.2.3(a), (b) (c) & (d) - The geological features and landforms of the Park generally require no specific management for their preservation, but are of high public interest, being very visible and accessible and very illustrative of the processes that formed the Southern Alps/Ka Tiritiri o te Moana (see 6.3.4 Information and Interpretation).

At the Park's numerous fossil locations there is a temptation for the public to collect fossil specimens, a practice which, unless specifically approved, is contrary to the National Parks Act.

Little is known about the physical characteristics of geothermal springs and seepages in the Park and only the Otehake and Otira springs are recorded in the geopreservation inventories.

The Otehake spring is an uncommon natural feature within the Park and is of considerable cultural, scientific and recreational interest. Depending on the state of the riverbed the public have either enjoyed the use of small natural pools (< 1 sq m) or have used shovels left on-site to dig larger pools for bathing. Well-used camping sites have developed on the adjoining riverbanks. The hole-digging action is contrary to the National Parks Act and policy 4.5(b) *General Policy for National Parks* (2005). Although the modification may seem minor and is from time to time remedied by floods, it does alter the appearance of what is a rare natural feature within national parks. As at October 2005 at least one of the dug holes was at the

spring source with the resultant pool too hot for bathing. Adjoining stream channels with variously coloured chemical and algae deposits were not generally disturbed by the dug pools.

6.2.3(e) - For Ngāi Tahu, all springs have spiritual value, as they emerge from Papa-tū-ā-nuku and should be respected. The springs were used along the ara hikoi, but their immediate source would have been protected and any cooking and bathing clearly separated, in that order, downstream of the spring source.

Methods

6.2.3(b) & (e)

Actions undertaken to avoid the disturbance of hot springs and seepages, should include the following:

- i. the provision of information on the national significance of these sites;**
- ii. the encouragement of respect for the natural features of the springs and seepages, by not disturbing any such site except in accordance with (iii) below;**
- iii. at the Otehake hot spring allow hand-only movement of rocks and gravel, but not at the spring's immediate source(s) and not affecting the adjoining chemical and algae deposits;**
- iv. if necessary seek a specific bylaw, within the Park Bylaws, to assist in enforcement of (ii) and (iii) above; and**
- v. the removal of any digging implements left at sites.**

6.2.3(c) & (d)

See Policy 6.4.4(a) & (b) of 6.4.4 Research and Information Needs.

6.2.4 Historic Features and Memorials

Policies

6.2.4(a)

To preserve features of historical, cultural and archaeological interest and importance.

6.2.4(b)

Archaeological assessments should be undertaken of areas known for historical activity, but where sites are not currently well recorded.

6.2.4(c)

The assessments under policy 6.2.4(b) should be considered before any permission is granted for development work or vehicle access that involves ground disturbance or the erection of structures.

6.2.4(d)

Consideration may be given to the relocation of locally significant suitable buildings or artefacts, antiquities or chattels on to or within Park land for historic display or interpretation purposes, provided that they can be shown to be authentic and have a demonstrable link with Park history.

6.2.4(e)

Where historical and cultural heritage sites are threatened by unavoidable damage or destruction through natural events or approved public facility or concession developments, then the following actions should be taken:

- i. a full recording of site information;
- ii. removal for alternative use or storage of buildings, artefacts and antiquities.

6.2.4(f)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance, and give effect to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for historic resources.

6.2.4(g)

Monuments, pou whenua, plaques or other memorials may be sited within the Park where they are:

- i. associated with people, traditions or events of exceptional importance in the history of the Park;
- ii. not located within the recreational opportunity remote settings areas within the Park;
- iii. consistent with the character of the site; and
- iv. not attached to, or engraved into, natural or historic features.

6.2.4(h)

To encourage respect for varied cultural values in the spreading of deceased persons' ashes and to discourage the spreading of ashes into water within the Park.

Explanation

6.2.4(a), (b) & (c) - Features in the Park which are regarded as being of historic interest and importance are recorded in Table 1 within 2.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage.

In managing sites and features of archaeological and historical interest within the Park the provisions of the relevant legislation and policy need to be observed. Legislation, in addition to the National Parks Act 1980, includes the Conservation Act 1987, the Historic Places Act 1993, the Protected Objects Act 1975 (formerly the Antiquities Act 1975) and the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

At a national level the Department's historic policies include the *ICOMOS New Zealand Charter for the conservation of places of cultural heritage value* (1993), the *Historic Heritage Strategy* (1995) and the *Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy: Atawhai Ruamano Conservation 2000* (1997). These national policies are given effect to through the conservancy level policies in the *Historic Resources Strategy: Canterbury Conservancy* (1998), the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy*, the *West Coast Historic Resources Plan* (1998), the *West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Management Strategy* (draft released in August 2007 and has no effect until approved) as well as in the *Protocols on the Department of Conservation's Interaction with Ngāi Tahu on Specified Issues* (1999).

It is important that historic sites are identified before any work is undertaken that may affect them. If human bones are uncovered in the Park, work must stop immediately and the Police, the Department and local tāngata whenua be notified. Ngāi Tahu has a *Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Koiwi Tangata Policy* (1993) that specifically addresses the discovery of pre-European human bones.

It is a statutory requirement to have an authority under the Historic Places Act for any works or actions that will destroy, damage or modify an archaeological site.

Where historic activity is known to have occurred but historic sites have not been well recorded, it is essential that an area assessment is undertaken before any development works are considered; see Table 2 within 2.4 Historical and Cultural Heritage.

6.2.4(d) - From time to time artefacts, antiquities or chattels associated with the history of the Park and the surrounding area are found, donated or offered for display or interpretation. Correct legal procedures must be followed in such cases (see above) and display is usually at the Visitor Centre, in accordance with the historic themes being interpreted.

6.2.4(e) - The protection of historical and cultural heritage sites is not always possible, especially when they are located within a mountainous area with many natural hazards and where they are located within a constricted corridor with public utilities (see 7.2.4 Historic Features and Memorials). A full site recording of affected sites is the minimum desirable action.

6.2.4(f) - The Protocol for historic resources acknowledges the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance. This Protocol is included in Appendix B. Ngāi Tahu may choose not to disclose, or disclose to a “silent file” system, the location of wāhi tapu sites to preserve the sacredness of these sites. Consultation will provide Ngāi Tahu with the opportunity to address proposed actions which may affect these areas and to advise the Department about Ngāi Tahu policies which the Department should follow.

6.2.4(g) - Other than in very specific circumstances, the placing of monuments, memorials and similar structures is not considered to be consistent with the preservation of the natural state of the Park. There is ongoing pressure for plaques and memorials to acknowledge persons who have had a long-standing or significant relationship with the Park or who died in the Park. Policy 6.2.4(g) reflects the requirements of the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005) and needs to be firmly adhered to, to avoid cumulative numbers of memorials as time goes on, especially within remote settings where natural values strongly predominate (see 6.3.2 Public Access and Use). There is a memorial book within the Arthur’s Pass Chapel.

6.2.4(h) - It is known that the spreading of deceased persons’ ashes does occur within the Park. This can be offensive to Ngāi Tahu and others, where the mauri and other values of waters may be affected. The issue is difficult to control other than through public education.

Methods

6.2.4(a), (b), (c), (d) & (e)

- 1. Achieve the historic management objectives for specific sites in the Park according to significance and threat as prescribed by the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* and the *Historic Resources Strategy: Canterbury Conservancy* (1998), or the *West Coast Tai Poutini Conservation Management Strategy* (when approved) and the *West Coast Historic Resources Plan* (1998), or any reviews of these documents, while noting in all cases the need for consistency with section 4(2)(c) of the National Parks Act 1980.**
- 2. Maintain and update as necessary the register of sites and features of historical and archaeological interest and importance.**
- 3. Undertake, facilitate or require as appropriate, the necessary archaeological and/or historic assessments of known historic activity areas, as listed in Table 2, in accordance with Policy 6.2.4(b).**
- 4. Continue the collection, display or development of features of archaeological and historic interest, including the recording of reminiscences of people who have had a close association with the Park.**

5. Maintain liaison and co-operation with the New Zealand Historic Places Trust and the New Zealand Geographic Board regarding the identification and preservation of archaeological and historical features and the naming of features.

6. Undertake active management of historic buildings and structures listed in Table 1 and recorded within the Department's visitor assets management system (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities), avoid any adverse effects of human activities on other historic sites and consider protection or mitigation (which may just be a final site recording) for any site threatened by natural events.

6.2.4(f)

Consult with tāngata whenua and where appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect their values in relation to historic sites. For all Deed of Settlement matters both tāngata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. "Consult" includes all of the relevant actions required under the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for historic resources.

6.2.4(g)

1. Applications or proposals for monuments, pou whenua, plaques or other memorials will be assessed against Policy 6.2.4(g) and such assessment should involve consultation with Ngāi Tahu in terms of method 6.2.4(f) and with the Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board.

2. Support the Arthur's Pass Chapel Committee in maintaining a memorial book at the Arthur's Pass Chapel to acknowledge those persons who have had a long-standing or significant relationship with the Park or who died in the Park.

6.2.4(h)

In respect of the spreading of deceased persons' ashes, encourage people wanting to scatter ashes in the Park to consult with tāngata whenua as a matter of courtesy and to consider locations other than to waters within the Park.

6.2.5 Introduced Animals

Policies

6.2.5(a)

To exterminate, control or manage introduced animals in or adjacent to the Park in accordance with national plans and policies, Table 3 of this Plan, regional pest management strategies and conservancy strategies.

6.2.5(b)

Recreational hunting of wild animals should be encouraged to complement other forms of wild animal control.

6.2.5(c)

Domestic animals should be excluded from the Park, subject to the Control of Dogs provisions in Part VA of the National Parks Act 1980.

6.2.5(d)

Livestock grazing should not be permitted within the Park.

6.2.5(e)

Management activities by the North Canterbury Fish and Game Council to control the Canada goose population and to monitor and research salmon spawning should be allowed in the Park.

Explanation

6.2.5(a) & (b) - The extermination of introduced animals as far as possible, except where the New Zealand Conservation Authority determines otherwise, is a requirement of section 4(2)(b) of the National Parks Act 1980. Under policy 4.2(a) of the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005) any such determination by the Authority would usually form part of its process of approving this Plan or an applicable conservation management strategy. No determination was given as part of the approval of this Plan.

Because of the high mobility of most introduced animals, extermination in the Park is not possible even if pursued alongside control measures in the surrounding region. Resources and technology do not, at present or in the foreseeable future, permit extermination over a wider region. A variety of control techniques, sometimes linked to priority areas and including the prevention of entry to the Park by animals, is therefore seen as the only feasible alternative during the life of this Plan. The Park is very accessible from State Highway 73 and other roads and this poses a risk of deliberate, illegal introductions of animal pests e.g. fallow deer, wallaby and pigs.

Introduced animals include a variety of species and classifications. Different agencies have responsibilities for control under different statutes:

- i. the Department has the overall responsibility for the control of wild animals (red deer, chamois, thar, goats and, within the Park, possums) and for helicopter hunting by virtue of the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. The *Himalayan thar control plan* (1993) governs thar control and sets a zero population density for all areas north of the Rakaia and Whitcombe Rivers, which includes the Park. Wild animal recovery

within the Park requires a concession, as of 1 October 1999 (see 6.4.3 Concessions General and 6.4.8 Aircraft). The Act also provides for the extermination of wild animals locally, where necessary and practicable, as dictated by proper land use.

- ii. the West Coast and Canterbury Regional Councils have responsibilities in respect of animal pests, including possums (on agricultural land) and rabbits under the Biosecurity Act 1993. Rabbits, possums and feral goats, deer and pigs are declared containment control pests, and feral cats, ferrets, stoats, weasels, possums and wasps are declared biodiversity pests within the *Canterbury Regional Pest Management Strategy* (2005). No animal pests are listed in any West Coast regional pest management strategy as at the date of approval of this Plan.
- iii. the North Canterbury and Westland Fish and Game Councils are responsible for the management of introduced salmon and trout sports fish (Conservation Act 1987) and are jointly responsible with the Department of Conservation for the management of introduced game birds (Wildlife Act 1953).
- iv. the Department of Conservation is responsible for the extermination, as far as possible, of animals as well, such as cats, wasps, rodents, hedgehogs and mustelids (stoats, ferrets and weasels) and for ensuring that domestic animals do not enter the Park, except where the New Zealand Conservation Authority determines otherwise (National Parks Act 1980).
- v. the Animal Health Board has responsibility for the control of TB-infected wildlife vector populations, which can include possums and stoats, but currently (2007) undertakes no control work in the Park.

Introduced wild animals, i.e. red deer, chamois, thar, goats, pigs and possums have detrimental effects on indigenous plants and animals. Severe modification of vegetation has occurred in some parts of the Park, affecting overall biodiversity. Such modification, interacting with the severe climate, can lead to erosion with consequential soil and water problems. While some vegetation recovery occurred as a result of commercial hunting pressure, this hunting decreased after 2002 and animal numbers are increasing again. Pig numbers are building on lands to the south and south-east of the Park and spreading into the Park. Recreational hunting plays a role in controlling introduced animal numbers and is to be encouraged as part of the concerted control effort; it is recognised as a valid recreational opportunity and activity within the Park, subject to permit approval. Hunter liaison information provision methods are set out under Method 6.2.5(a) and (b). Significant possum control programmes have been maintained since 1988 particularly in the Otira catchment, to protect rata/kamahi forest.

On a seasonal basis parts of the Park can have some of the highest introduced wasp densities in New Zealand and control may be needed for both ecological and public use purposes. Introduced fish may compete with native fish and whio/blue duck for food, but control is practical only in isolated or headwater waterways. Hare, rabbit, cat, rodent and mustelid populations are variable and need to be closely monitored and where feasible, controlled, as they can increase rapidly and deplete native plants and animals.

Canterbury Conservancy has a *Canterbury Conservancy Animal Pest Management Strategy* (2006). Under this Strategy animal pest management is divided into threat-led responses (which include biosecurity responses) and asset-led responses (which include site-led responses). A threat-led response includes control and surveillance and is initiated when a pest crosses a national, inter-island, regional or geographic border, but has not yet established across its full potential range. Management focuses first on eradication and later on containment (e.g. maintaining zero densities). An asset-led response defends a particular site or species from the most significant threats to its biodiversity or to the species. Management focuses on controlling a range of threats to the site or species. Critical sites are defined as strongholds of threatened and representative species and habitats and are the bottom line for biodiversity protection in the Canterbury Conservancy.

As identified in 2.3.1 Indigenous Species, Habitats and Ecosystems, the Park contains several threatened species and significant representative environments. In particular, within the above Strategy, the Hawdon and Poulter valleys are a “Critical Site” and the importance of the Park’s beech forests is acknowledged. The Otira catchment is listed in *Restoring the dawn chorus: a Biodiversity Action Plan for the Hokitika Area* (2001) as a priority site for maintaining a representative rata/kamahi forest ecosystem.

Introduced animals, the status of the threat they pose to the Park and the various management responses are set out in Table 3.

6.2.5(c) – Domestic animals (this includes all pets) have the potential to affect indigenous flora and fauna adversely and to create conflict with other Park users. Exclusion is necessary to ensure that no animals are left uncontrolled. This is especially important given the presence of roroa/great spotted kiwi in the Park.

If stray domestic animals are found within the Park every attempt will be made to identify the owners and have the animals removed. If animals are found within the Park they may be dealt with as trespassing animals, in accordance with section 62 of the National Parks Act 1980. The seizure and other provisions of Part VA of the National Parks Act apply with respect to dogs.

This policy does not preclude the use of dogs for police, park management, customs or search and rescue purposes, of guide dogs used by the blind, or companion dogs, all in accordance with section 56E of the National Parks Act 1980. Any other use of dogs, including dogs involved in approved animal pest control and farm dogs, if retrieving straying stock within the Park, require a dog control permit in accordance with section 56B of the Act.

The use of horses or other ridden or pack animals within the Park is not appropriate because of their ability to pug tracks, damage vegetation, spread noxious weeds and create conflict with other Park users.

6.2.5(d) – Livestock, particularly cattle, straying into the Park can cause significant damage to vegetation, riparian areas and wetlands, introduce weed species, damage tracks and impact on public use. Particular problem areas are in the Hawdon, Poulter, Mounds of Misery (only part of which is in the Park), Deception and Taramakau areas, all exacerbated by adjoining freehold or

pastoral lease lands. Often the National Park boundary is impractical to fence and as national parks are exempt from the Fencing Act 1978 the full cost of boundary fencing falls on the Department, unless there is some adjoining landowner agreement. Fences have been erected across the Hawdon and Poulter valleys at or near the Park boundaries; others in the Deception and Otira valleys near their junction. The Hawdon fence is very effective, the Poulter one much less so because it crosses a larger river and has higher adjoining stock pressure.

Solutions other than Park boundary fencing include:

- adjoining landowners taking greater responsibility for their stock control;
- erecting fences at suitable locations within the Park;
- negotiating fence locations outside the Park;
- achieving greater control via concessions for grazing on conservation lands adjoining the Park; and
- acquiring adjoining land and/or grazing rights including via pastoral lease tenure review.

Where co-operative management cannot be realised the trespassing animals provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 can be applied.

6.2.5(e) - Introduced fish and game bird populations are relatively significant, with the Poulter River valley being both a Canada goose breeding area and the main salmon spawning ground of the Waimakariri River catchment. Other valleys have lesser goose breeding and salmon spawning. Other game birds present are mallard, Californian quail and chukar, but these are not hunted within the Park. There are various impacts of salmon and trout on the Park's indigenous fauna and visual values, but the effects are localised to some streams and are temporary and largely unavoidable.

The North Canterbury Fish and Game Council undertakes seasonal salmon spawning surveys and periodic trap-and-release surveys on a spawning tributary to the Poulter River. Canada geese may pose land and wildlife management problems through grazing on native vegetation, spreading seeds of plant pests and, because of the large amounts of faeces they produce, impacting on water clarity and quality.

Methods

6.2.5(a) & (b)

1. In a form or forms that give effect to the documents listed within policy 6.2.5(a), operational plans for the control of introduced animals should be prepared by the West Coast and Canterbury conservancies of the Department, in consultation where necessary with the West Coast and Canterbury Regional Councils.

2. Permits may be issued in terms of section 8(2) Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and section 60(4) National Parks Act 1980 for ground hunting in the Park. Permits may be withheld for certain areas for management reasons during peak user periods to ensure that other Park visitors are not endangered. They may also be withheld for research purposes or where hunting may diminish the effectiveness of control operations. Permits will

be restricted to the hunting of deer, goats, pigs, possums and chamois, and thar and wallaby should they be found to be present in the Park.

3. Individual permits should not generally be issued for the hunting of Canada geese, other introduced game birds, rabbits, hares, cats and mustelids as, if they do require hunting, they will be part of an introduced animal control programme.

The use of dogs should not be permitted except in accordance with method number 5 (below).

4. Continue the Department/recreational hunter liaison meetings, permit systems improvements and hunting information provision on the Department web site.

5. Animal control operators approved by the Director-General may be permitted to use suitable dogs, in accordance with sections 56B and 56C National Parks Act, where they are permanently marked and the use of dogs is an effective way of controlling animals, such as pigs and goats.

5. Applications for licences to carry on a guided recreational hunting service in the Park will be considered under the concessions policy (see 6.4.7 Guiding and Mountain- and Bush-Craft Instruction).

6.2.5(d)

1. Concessions should not be issued for livestock grazing rights within the Park, in accordance with General Policy for National Parks 10.2(a).

2. Seek that where concessions are being considered for livestock grazing on public conservation lands adjoining or near to the Park, then the effects of animals straying into the Park are a concession consideration and conditions are prescribed to prevent such straying into the Park or the concession application is declined.

3. In conjunction with adjoining landholders consideration should be given to land and stock management methods, land status and fencing agreements and law enforcement, to avoid livestock straying into the Park.

6.2.5(e)

1. Permits may be issued to Fish and Game Councils for the killing of introduced game birds, the taking, removal, or pricking of their eggs and the destruction of their nests where:

i. this is necessary to properly control populations, in order to prevent land or wildlife management problems either in the Park or on adjacent lands;

ii. this is necessary for the preservation of native plants and animals and for public safety; and

iii. authorisation has been obtained under the Wildlife Act 1953.

Where killing is considered the most appropriate control method, preference will usually be given to large control operations rather than to a number of smaller efforts.

- 2. Permits may be issued to the North Canterbury Fish and Game Council for undertaking monitoring and research of salmon spawning where:**
- i. an assessment of environmental effects has been undertaken and any identified adverse effects will be avoided, remedied or mitigated.**
 - ii. any helicopter use avoids weekends and public holidays (see 6.4.8 Aircraft);**
 - iii. all equipment used is temporary and is removed after seasonal work is completed.**

Key to Table 3²

- (1) Management responses will include Canterbury/West Coast *Tai Poutini* inter-conservancy responses. Some responses, while targeted at particular introduced animal species, will also impact on other animals, either as lesser or secondary targets. The columns should be read collectively, for each animal, to understand the full management response.
- (2) Potential escapes include both accidental and deliberate (illegal) releases.
- (3) Operational plans such as the *Blue duck (wbio) Hymenolaimus malacorhynchos recovery plan 1997-2007* (Adams et al, 1997) and *Restoring the dawn chorus: a Biodiversity Action Plan for the Hokitika Area* (2001).
- (4) See 6.2.2.1 Hawdon and Poulter Valleys and the Kākāriki Karaka/Orange-Fronted Parakeet Programme.
- (5) *The Himalayan ibar control plan* (1993) and the *Department of Conservation's Policy Statement on Deer Control* (2001).
- (6) The *Department of Conservation national possum control plan 1993-2002 - a strategy for sustained protection of native plants and animal communities* (1994).
- (7) The *Canada Goose Management Plan* (1995) and the *Salmon Management Plan* (in prep).
- (8) Containment outside the Park will require surveillance monitoring in the area surrounding the defined containment area. This surrounding area may include the Park.
- (9) Working with the community, in addition to community involvement through the various guiding plans and projects, involves providing information to hunters and adjoining landowners and supporting the Arthur's Pass village community and the Coast to Coast concession holder in their stoat trapping and monitoring programmes in the Bealey and Mingha/Deception valleys.
- (10) Hunting pressure will primarily come from recreational hunting. Commercial wild animal control may also apply some hunting pressure.
- (11) There are numerous legislative enforcement powers in respect of matters such as the movement and release of introduced animals (including fish), trespassing stock and taking domestic pets into the Park.
- (12) Includes both sports fish and pest fish species, the latter addressed for Canterbury under the *Canterbury Regional Pest Management Strategy* (2005).

² Some of the policies and plans referenced in this key may be revised during the life of this Plan, with the result that current references may become out-dated.

and/or currently of threat to Arthur's Pass National Park (see Key on previous page)

Threat to		Management responses (1)																
		Guiding plans and projects					Management tactics					Other management approaches						
natural spread from near Park	potential escapes (2)	operational plans (3)	Hawdon/Poultter programme (4)	Regional Pest Mgt Strategies	thar & deer control plans (5)	possum control plan (6)	Fish & Game mgt plans (7)	research	containment outside Park (8)	zero density within the Park	maintain low or target densities	critical site focus	no control by DOC	result/ outcome monitoring	working with community (9)	hunting pressure (10)	exclusion fencing	conservation law enforcement(11)
		X		X	X					X			X	X	X	X		
	X	X		X	X				X	X					X			X
X		X			X			X		X				X				X
X	X	X		X					X	X						X		
X										X					X	X		X
X				X						X					X	X		
	X		X	X		X			X	X		X		X	X			X
				X						X					X			
		X		X				X					X	X	X			
				X									X					
				X									X	X	X			
		X											X			X		
							X				X			X				
							X						X	X				
X	X			X					X	X					X			X
X	X								X						X		X	X
X	X								X						X			X

6.2.6 Introduced Plants

Policies

6.2.6(a)

To exterminate, control or manage introduced plants³ in or adjacent to the Park in accordance with national plans, Table 4 of this Plan, regional pest management strategies, local plans and strategies and best practice for introduced plant control.

6.2.6(b)

To actively seek to prevent the introduction or further spread of plant species that are not native to the Park.

6.2.6(c)

To permit herbicide use and consider the use of biological control agents if no other effective alternatives are available.

Explanation

6.2.6(a) & (b) - The extermination of introduced plants as far as possible, except where the Authority determines otherwise, is a requirement of section 4(2)(b) of the National Parks Act 1980. Under policy 4.2(a) of the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005), any such determination by the Authority would usually form part of its process of approving this Plan or an applicable conservation management strategy. No determination was given as part of the approval of this Plan.

In most cases, it is not possible to exterminate introduced plant species, because they are already too widespread, there is no way to prevent re-invasion and the control methods would adversely affect native species and ecosystems. Limits on the resources available and the lack of effective technical solutions, prevent the eradication of introduced plants at present and in the foreseeable future. For most weed species of concern, ongoing control is the only option available.

The *Department of Conservation Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds* (Owen, 1998) describes the Department's long-term approach to protecting native species and natural communities from the threats posed by invasive weeds (introduced plants). This strategic plan gives guidance and a system for prioritising weed control programmes, so that the highest priority work is carried out where natural values are high and the threat to those values from weed species is most severe.

There is very limited funding available for weed control locally. The prioritisation of additional weed control funding is carried out on a national basis; to date no additional funding has been available for weed control in the Park. If funding increases, additional weed control funding for the Park is likely.

Using the above *Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds* and weed inventories, the *Waimakariri Area Plant Pest Strategy* (Harding 1998) has been prepared. This identifies nine species of concern in the Canterbury side of the Park; these are apple, blackberry, briar, broom, Californian thistle, crack willow, gorse, ragwort, Russell lupin. In the wider Waimakariri Area, fifty-nine weed species are

³ While "introduced plants" is the term used in the National Parks Act 1980, various other terms such as "weeds" and "pest plants" are also used, with the primary focus in all cases being invasive weeds, i.e. those that cause problems by adversely impacting on the natural values of the Park. Normally, these plant species will be exotic species.

present. This information is from the *Waimakariri Area Plant Pest Strategy* and the weed surveillance booklet *Wicked weeds to watch out for... in Waimakariri Area* (2002). Spanish heath is right on the Park boundary at Bealey Spur and could spread to non-forested areas. Darwin's barberry and Chilean flame creeper are two examples of weeds within the Waimakariri basin that could spread to the Park. The figures above do not include exotic grass species; these are now so widespread that they would be impossible to control.

On the western side of the Park the operational plan, *Restoring the dawn chorus: a Biodiversity Action Plan for the Hokitika Area* (2001), identifies as actions of high importance, weed surveillance and the control of gorse, broom and Russell lupin. An identified action of less importance is the control of Japanese honeysuckle and Darwin's barberry in the Otira valley.

The South Island has been declared a "controlled area" by Biosecurity New Zealand for the invasive algae didymo (*Didymosphenia geminata*). This has legal and/or personal responsibility implications for the cleaning of equipment of any type that has been in contact with waterbodies, when moving into or out of the South Island, or between waterbodies. Canterbury and West Coast Tai Poutini conservancies have Didymo Management Plans (2006) that seek to minimise Department operational work, and concessionaire and other authorised work, spreading or leading to the establishment of didymo locations and to support other agencies in preventing didymo spread. As at 2006, didymo has not been found within north Canterbury, the Park or adjoining West Coast areas. If need be, Biosecurity New Zealand, or the Department for the Park, can require strict equipment cleaning procedures for any persons entering the Park or moving between waterbodies within the Park.

Other strategies that identify and reinforce weed control work are the *Canterbury Regional Pest Management Strategy 2005-2015* (2005) and the *Regional Pest Plant Management Strategy for the West Coast* (2005). A variety of pests, both agricultural and environmental are included in these strategies, along with a range of control regimes. Within the Canterbury part of the Park, the only pests that Environment Canterbury requires the Department to control are broom and gorse in boundary and scattered plant situations. For the West Coast part of the Park the Department has indicated that it will abide by the boundary control rules for plant pests in the interests of being a good neighbour.

As well as boundary control work in the Otira/Deception, the Department (Hokitika Area) is attempting to stop the spread of gorse up the Taramakau valley upstream of the Otehake River junction and is preventing its spread into the Otehake valley within the Park.

In the Waimakariri catchment (Waimakariri Area) the Department is also undertaking boundary control work and has assisted an Arthur's Pass village community "Weedbusters" programme for Russell lupin around the village. It has also undertaken limited Russell lupin control, primarily to limit its spread upriver of the State Highway 73 bridge.

The division of the Park and the adjoining areas' introduced plant control between Waimakariri and Hokitika Area offices, and between two regional councils, has not guaranteed a uniform approach to the issue for the Park.

The *Selwyn District Plan* (2000) has policy to avoid the introduction of "tree species" (undefined) to Arthur's Pass village where there is potential for these to adversely impact on the National Park.

6.2.6(c) - All weed control is carried out so that any damage to human health, native species, ecosystems and conservation values are minimised, in accordance with Department and industry best practice. Herbicide use is the primary control method, supplemented by plant pulling where practicable. Section 5A National Parks Act does allow for the use of biological control organisms, by specific approval from the Minister of Conservation, subject to regard to any adverse effects that may arise and sufficient scientific research and advice. It is possible that such organisms may spread to the Park by themselves e.g. if adjoining landowners use them.

Methods

6.2.6(a) & (b)

- 1. Introduced plant control should be carried out at the highest priority sites. The rankings and methods of prioritisation should be reviewed and altered as circumstances change. It is envisaged that new prioritisation processes will be developed which will more accurately align control with the Department's priorities.**
- 2. Operational plans for the control of introduced plants should be maintained by the Hokitika and Waimakariri Area Offices of the Department, in coordination with each other and in consultation where necessary with the West Coast and Canterbury Regional Councils, in a form or forms that give effect to the documents listed within Policy 6.2.6(a).**
- 3. Maintain ongoing liaison and consultation with the regional councils, adjoining lessees and landowners, Transit New Zealand and the New Zealand Railways Corporation to avoid reinfestation from areas outside the Park (see also section 7 The Aickens to Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor).**

6.2.6(c)

- 1. Introduced plant control should be carried out using best practice and the most effective methods available, whilst ensuring minimal damage to native species and ecosystems.**
- 2. Consents under the Resource Management Act 1991 will be sought where required.**
- 3. Approval will be sought under section 5A National Parks Act for any proposed use of biological control organisms on introduced plants.**

Key to Table 4

1. Management responses include those from both Canterbury and West Coast Conservancies.
2. Potential escapes include those from both accidental and deliberate (illegal) releases.
3. Operational plans such as the *Waimakariri Area Plant Pest Strategy* (Harding, 1998), *Restoring the dawn chorus: a Biodiversity Action Plan for the Hokitika Area* (2001), and *Canterbury Conservancy Didymo Management Plan* (2006).
4. Site-led focus involves control at a specific site e.g. no spread of gorse into the Otehae valley.
5. Weed-led focus involves surveillance and/or control of a specific plant wherever it is found e.g. the possible new arrival of plants such as Darwin's barberry.
6. Working with the community, in addition to community involvement through the various guiding plans and projects, involves providing information to adjoining landowners and supporting the Arthur's Pass and Otira village and Bealey Spur settlement communities in Weedbuster projects and in identifying suitable plants for their communities.
7. Especially where earth-moving machinery is being used, rock and gravel is brought into or moved within the Park, or other development work is undertaken, concessions should have conditions to minimise the introduction of pest plants and control those that may get introduced or spread (e.g. see 7.2.9 State Highway 73).
8. Tree species that may adversely impact on the National Park.
9. Controlled directly by Environment Canterbury.

Table 4: Introduced plants within and/or of threat to Arthur's Pass National Park (see Key on previous page)

C = Canterbury (Waimakariri Area)
W = West Coast (Hokitika Area)
B = both Canterbury and West Coast

Introduced plant	Incidence in or threat to the Park				Management responses (1)								
					Guiding plans and projects			Management tactics			Other		
	widespread	localised	potential intro. from near Park	potential escapes (2)	operational plans (3)	Regional Pest Mgt Strategies	Selwyn District Plan (AP village)	eradication within the Park	Site-led focus (4)	Weedled focus (5)	no control	advocacy inside & outside Park (6)	concessions condition (7)
apple		C			C					C			
blackberry		B			C						C		
sweet briar		C			C						C		
broom		B			C	B			B				B
Californian thistle		B			C						C		
crack willow		C			C				C				
gorse		B	B		C	B		B	B				B
ragwort		B	B		C	B					C		
Russell lupin	C	W	B	B	B				C			B	B
Darwin's barberry		W	B			C		B		C		B	
Chilean flame creeper			C					C		C		C	
Spanish heath			C							C		C	
tree species (8)						C	C			C		C	
waterweeds				B						C		B	
didymo				B	B					B		B	B
coltsfoot (9)		C	C			C		C					
grasses/clover	B										B		
Japanese honeysuckle		W	W		W			W		W			

6.2.7 Natural Hazards

Policy

6.2.7(a)

To manage Park facilities to reduce their risk from natural hazards.

6.2.7(b)

Existing facilities subject to natural hazards at unacceptable levels should be relocated to safer ground, as resources permit. Where no safer alternative is available the facility should be closed as a temporary measure during times when the Area Manager considers the risk to be unacceptably high.

6.2.7(c)

To manage the Park so that, except where public safety is threatened and cannot practically be maintained by other means, nothing will be done which would alter the natural processes of, for example, earthquakes, avalanches, debris flows, flooding and erosion.

Explanation

6.2.7(a), (b) & (c) - Natural hazards, from earthquakes, snow avalanches and floods to debris flows, rock avalanches and erosion, are highly likely throughout the Park at any time of year. Insensitive development increases the threat from natural hazards and may accelerate erosion processes.

Knowledge is still being gained about natural hazards and the factors affecting them. Greater understanding will allow more informed management decisions to be made about such matters as hut and track siting and the impacts of earthworks. Some public facilities may be moved or removed as a result. The requirements of the Building Act 2004 and the results of geotechnical and avalanche risk assessments are primary determinants for unacceptable levels of risk.

Informing and increasing public awareness of natural hazards and safety issues is covered in section 6.3.5 Public Safety and Emergency Services.

Methods

6.2.7(a), (b) & (c)

1. Facilities should be located so as to minimise the risk of damage or loss (and thus minimise the risk to public safety) resulting from natural hazards. Research to assist with such decisions is encouraged (see 6.4.4 Research and Information Needs).

2. On the issues of soil conservation and water management within the Park, as part of the Waimakariri and Taramakau catchments, there should be close co-operation with the Canterbury and West Coast Regional Councils on their statutory functions and regard had to their regional plan provisions.

3. Except as part of the rehabilitation of disturbance resulting from public use (see 7.2.7 Landscape Management), revegetation or engineering programmes to prevent or control erosion are not considered to be necessary.

4. The removal or moving of erosion or avalanche materials should be permitted in waterways, subject to Resource Management Act approvals where required, where facilities such as water supplies, roads (including State Highway 73), the Midland Railway, stop banks, buildings and bridges would be threatened by erosion, flood or avalanche events. The removal or moving of erosion or avalanche material is acceptable on Park roads and at other facilities that are to be retained for public use and enjoyment. Excavated material should be deposited on sites which, as far as possible, are geologically stable, minimise ecological and visual impacts and which will not become a source for introduced plant spread.

6.2.8 Fire Control

Policy

6.2.8

To prevent and extinguish all fires within or threatening the Park, other than those permitted by the National Park Bylaws.

Explanation

6.2.8 - Fires, especially during warm dry north-westerly weather, are a major hazard, not just for the Park, but also for adjoining land downwind. All fires, whether lit naturally, accidentally or deliberately, can seriously damage the Park environment. Any damaged area will take a long time to recover, as is evidenced by monitoring of the Cockayne vegetation transects and by several large fire sites just to the south of the Park.

The Park has lost four huts through fires (Edwards, 1970; Anti Crow 1978; Carroll 1980; Hawdon, 2005). Fires, large and small, starting alongside SH 73 or the Midland Railway are regular summer events, albeit outside the Park to date. Climate change predictions are for drier conditions and a consequent higher fire risk in the Park's southern areas.

There is a high risk of fire spreading through and from the Bealey Spur settlement.

The lighting of fires is subject to strict controls set out in the Park Bylaws (see Appendix A). No "permanently constructed fireplaces" (in terms of bylaw 8) are considered necessary in the Park. Cooking equipment acceptable for use in the Park are portable camping stoves, cookers and burners. During use, the flame should be enclosed and Park Bylaws as to location should be observed. Solid fuel barbecues and thermettes are not acceptable, because the disposal of the resulting embers can constitute a fire hazard. Users have a responsibility to ensure that any fire does not create a fire hazard and a need to be aware that if a wild fire results they may be held responsible for fire-fighting costs.

The overall responsibility for the control and extinguishing of outdoor fires in the Park or within 1km of its boundaries lies with the Department of Conservation under the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977. The Department's *Standard Operating Procedure: Fire control, operations, procedures and guidelines* (1999) directs its fire tasks. A fire plan, for use in fire emergencies, is revised annually and details the fire-fighting equipment available and procedures to be followed.

Responsibility for the protection of buildings from fire is split according to ownership of the buildings. Government departments are responsible for fire protection inspections and the maintenance of fire equipment in their own buildings. The New Zealand Fire Service and the Selwyn and Westland District Councils are responsible for fire safety inspections and licensing of concessionaire accommodation buildings.

The Westland District Council maintains a registered rural fire party at Otira and Selwyn District Council maintains one at Arthur's Pass.

Methods

6.2.8

- 1. Enforce the Park Bylaws and restricted and prohibited fire seasons, and respond to all smoke reports.**
- 2. Have an ongoing commitment to the education of Park users and co-operation with adjoining land occupiers. Interpretive information, public notices, publicising of bylaws and contact with Park staff will be given priority where possible.**
- 3. Devise a suitable method for the safe disposal of fire ashes at Park huts with fireplaces or woodburners.**

6.2.9 Boundaries and Park Additions

Policies

6.2.9(a)

To keep the Park boundaries under continuous review to enable adjustments or additions that would assist ecosystem protection, public use or land management.

6.2.9(b)

To seek the closure of unformed legal roads within the Park and the addition of the lands to the Park.

6.2.9(c)

To seek the inclusion into the Park of the Hawdon Flats Reserve for National Park Purposes.

Explanation

6.2.9(a) - The present Park boundaries generally follow natural features, but some straight line boundaries exist, with little regard for topography. In these cases rationalisation would improve Park management (see Method 6.2.5(d)3 regarding introduced animal control). In other cases additions to the Park would improve protection of natural features or increase public use and enjoyment. Some habitat types which are presently under-represented in the Park include dry tussock grasslands and wet podocarp rainforest.

Processes such as pastoral lease tenure review under the Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998, land purchases by the Nature Heritage Fund, change of land status of adjoining conservation land, or giftings may lead to additions to the Park in the future. It is also possible to make Park boundary adjustments (see *General Policy* 6(h) and 6(k)) to solve boundary problems, where there would be an overall benefit to the Park.

Section 8 of the National Parks Act 1980 provides for the investigation of additions to the Park. The New Zealand Conservation Authority has some discretion on how proposals for additions are processed and their required processes are set out in section 6 of the *General Policy for National Parks*.

Some boundary adjustments will occur as a result of State Highway 73 re-alignments and subsequent road legalisation surveys, in accordance with section 7.2.9 State Highway 73 and consistent with *General Policy* 6(k).

6.2.9(b)

Policy 8.1(i) of the General Policy for National Parks states that unformed legal roads within national parks should be closed and the land incorporated within parks, where they do not provide legal access for adjacent landowners. Unformed legal roads to which this policy would apply are on Bealey Spur, Brown Hill and in the Cox valley/Lake Grace area.

6.2.9(c) A large part of the area known as the Hawdon Flats, or Riversdale Flats, (see Figure 3) was gazetted as a Reserve for National Park Purposes in 1909, along with the bulk of the land that now forms the Park to the south-east of the Main Divide, but was not included within the Park when it was created in 1930. There has been some confusion over the status of the land but a recent investigation states that the area is a reserve under the Reserves

Act 1977 and no lease or licence exists over the area. A smaller part of the Flats is a conservation area under the Conservation Act.

The reserve and conservation area easily meets the criteria in *General Policy* 6(h) for an addition or boundary adjustment to a national park without a formal section 8 National Parks Act investigation.

Other parts of the Hawdon/Riversdale Flats are freehold and pastoral run land in irregular disjointed parcels which, through negotiation with landowners may be able to be amalgamated to provide more manageable Park and freehold land boundaries or acquired for adding to the Park.

The Hawdon riverbed passes through the Hawdon/Riversdale Flats, currently as Crown land. *General Policy* 6(j) seeks the inclusion within national parks of Crown riverbed where it is within the boundaries of the park.

The formed Mount White Road and the side-road to Hawdon Shelter are mainly on national park land and several unformed roads exist across the Hawdon/Riversdale Flats. To clarify road administrative responsibilities it is desirable that formed roads are legalised and/or accepted as Department facilities and that unformed legal roads are closed (see the reference to *General Policy* 8.1(i) under 6.2.9(a) above).

Methods

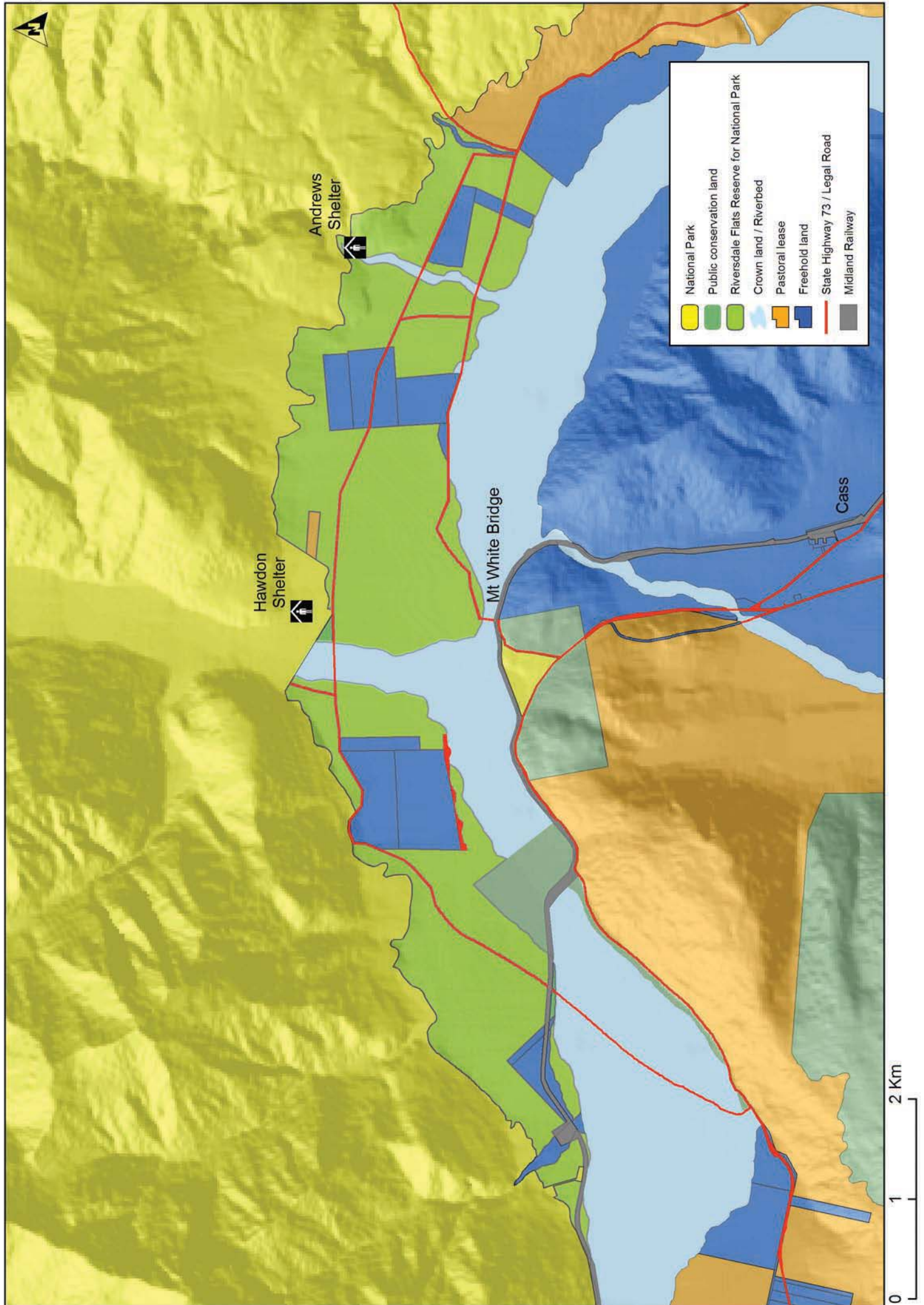
6.2.9(a)

- 1. Take opportunities as they arise to negotiate Park boundary adjustments where there would be an overall benefit to the Park, especially in terms of minimising stock movement into the Park and of facilitating introduced animal and plant control programmes.**
- 2. Investigate opportunities as they arise to extend the Park's representation of dry tussock grasslands and wet podocarp rainforest habitats.**
- 3. Action Park boundary adjustments consequent to State Highway 73 road legalisations, in accordance with Method 7.2.9(e).**

6.2.9(c)

- 1. Clarify with Mt White Station the land status, then negotiate for the rationalisation of reserve, National Park, freehold and pastoral run boundaries and/or grazing controls on the Hawdon/Riversdale Flats.**
- 2. Recommend to the New Zealand Conservation Authority that the Hawdon Flats Reserve for National Park Purposes, if its reserve status is confirmed, be added to the Park, along with the adjoining conservation area. See also 3 and 6 below.**
- 3. Seek the inclusion of the lower Hawdon River Crown riverbed within the area recommended for addition to the Park.**
- 4. Seek the legalisation by Selwyn District Council of the formed Mount White Road.**
- 5. Accept the Hawdon Shelter side-road as a Department administered Park road (see 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles).**
- 6. Seek the closure of the unformed legal roads on Hawdon/Riversdale Flats and the addition of the lands to the Park.**

Figure 3: Riversdale Flats land status



6.2.10 Preservation and Heritage Outcomes

Preservation outcomes:

For the whole Park:

1. natural processes continue to maintain, naturally alter and influence the Park's natural values, assisted in places by limited human intervention;
2. rock wren and kea are found throughout the subalpine-alpine habitats;
3. the giant buttercup, the large herb *Ranunculus godleyanus*, the broom *Carmichaelia arborea* and other species palatable to mammalian browsers continue to regenerate, flower and fruit;
4. threatened species are either preserved in the Park, or are being preserved outside the Park in a manner that allows for the species population within the Park to be either increased or re-introduced in the future;
5. thar have been prevented from expanding their range into the Park and areas adjoining the Park;
6. geopreservation sites have not been altered from their natural state in any significant way;
7. geothermal sites in the Otira, Deception and Mingha valleys and their surrounding landscapes retain their natural character and have not been altered from their natural state in any way;
8. the Otehake geothermal spring and outflowing waterway retains its natural character while allowing for some public enjoyment of the site;
9. groundwater and hyporheic fauna communities have been maintained subject to natural variations;
10. long finned eel, Canterbury and alpine galaxias populations have been maintained;
11. recreational and commercial hunting contribute to achieving low deer and zero thar numbers, while there is zero tolerance of goat and pig;
12. possum control is occurring in those places with the highest indigenous biodiversity values at the greatest risk from possums; and
13. natural water quality is maintained for all waters in the Park.

For the Taramakau, Otira, Deception & Rolleston Valleys:

14. the slopes of the Otira, Deception and Rolleston valleys turn red in summer when southern rata blooms. Rata flowers and the flowers and fruit of other species, including Hall's totara, mountain five-finger and fuchsia, provide a rich source of food for the abundant native bird and insect life;
15. the valley floors of the upper Deception, Rolleston and Taramakau are virtually free of gorse and broom; and
16. State Highway 73 and the Midland Railway, although not on National Park land, are managed in a way that protects national park values, in recognition of their location through and as a frontage to the Park.

For the Hawdon & Poulter Valleys:

17. beech forest habitats remain intact and continue to support indigenous fauna and flora;
18. the threatened species kākāriki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet is protected from predators as far as possible and has a self-sustaining population; and
19. there is a continuing, viable threatened species programme with high public support and minimal impacts on other national park values.

For the Bealey and Waimakariri Valleys:

20. the Cockayne vegetation transects near the Arthur's Pass summit are preserved and human-induced adverse effects on them avoided;
21. Arthur's Pass village has *Selwyn District Plan*, *Canterbury Regional Pest Management Strategy* and *Canterbury Natural Resources Regional Plan* controls to help keep the village clear of introduced pest plants that could spread into the Park;
22. State Highway 73 and the Midland Railway, although not on National Park land, are managed in accordance with high environmental standards, in recognition of their location through and as a frontage to the Park; and
23. the upper Waimakariri Valley is maintained as a weed-free riverbed, especially clear of Russell lupin, broom and gorse.

Heritage Outcomes:

For the whole Park:

24. the places of special significance to Ngāi Tahu are recorded or remembered and systems are established in such a way that these places and their values are preserved as far as possible;
25. all sites and buildings entered within the Department's visitor assets management system (Table 1) are actively managed;
26. historic features (Table 2) not yet entered into the visitor assets management system are assessed;
27. the memory of old huts and other historic features which are no longer existing or are not readily visible, is retained in Park archives, or in visitor information, which may be displayed in nearby buildings; and
28. a selection of huts and bivvies is preserved, with ongoing use, representing the range of designs over the historic era.

For the Otira, Rolleston, Bealey & Waimakariri Valleys:

29. the substantial assemblage of Māori and European historic sites and features along and associated with the Arthur's Pass route, from the former Bealey hotel to Aickens, is recorded, researched, interpreted to visitors, and preserved as far as possible; and

30. permission given for any SH 73, Midland railway or other utility or concession activity has included specific conditions to honour the historic features and sites and preferably to avoid, but failing that to remedy or mitigate, any adverse effects on the features and sites.

For the Taramakau Valley:

31. Locke Stream hut is actively managed and used as an historic hut.

6.3 PUBLIC BENEFIT, USE AND ENJOYMENT

6.3.1 Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment Objectives

1. The provision and maintenance of camp sites, amenity areas and short walks alongside State Highway 73 and other road access principally for road and rail travellers passing through or briefly visiting the Park or staying in accommodation outside the Park.
2. The provision and maintenance of overnight accommodation, shelter and tramping tracks in the main valleys principally for family and school groups and trampers with limited experience.
3. The provision and maintenance of overnight accommodation, shelter and routes away from the main valleys principally for the safety of experienced Park users.
4. The management of all tributary catchments to the east of the Poulter River valley, including the Thompson Stream catchment, as a more remote area, primarily without huts, in which Park users should be fully self-reliant for accommodation and shelter.
5. The use of the Park by public who know, appreciate and respect the values of the Park, and whose use is with knowledge of and respect for the natural hazards that exist.

Index to Public Benefit, Use and Enjoyment policy and outcomes sections:

6.3.2	Public Access and Use	88
6.3.3	Public Facilities	97
6.3.4	Information and Interpretation	108
6.3.5	Public Safety and Emergency Services	111
6.3.6	Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles	112
6.3.7	Waste Disposal	117
6.3.8	Public Use Outcomes	119

6.3.2 Public Access and Use

Policies

6.3.2(a)

To encourage public access and use of the Park and to assess proposals for the maintenance, further development or upgrading of public access and use, and/or monitor the effects of activities, having particular regard to:

- i. consistency with relevant legislation, General Policy and the Park Bylaws;**
- ii. the provisions of this Plan;**
- iii. any impacts on the Park's scenery, natural features, ecological systems, indigenous plant and animal life and cultural resources, including any potential impacts of increased public use as a result of an access development or upgrade;**
- iv. the existing natural character of the relevant area;**
- v. effects on natural quiet and natural darkness;**
- vi. the appropriateness of the type of access or the activity for the visitor management setting(s) of the relevant area;**
- vii. the existing use and history of public use in the area;**
- viii. minimising conflict between different user groups;**
- ix. public safety;**
- x. any adverse effects on Ngāi Tahu values;**
- xi. the extent of opportunities for the proposals or activity to be undertaken outside of the Park;**
- xii. any known effects of the proposed or actual activity where it has previously been undertaken in or out of the Park;**
- xiii. taking a precautionary approach where the effects of an activity are not well known; and**
- xiv. any results of monitoring established for a new activity.**

6.3.2(b)

The recreational opportunity settings within the areas of the Park as shown on Figures 4 and 4A¹, and as described and given criteria in Table 5, will be applied, except as allowed by 6.4.7 Guiding and Mountain- and Bush-craft Instruction.

6.3.2(c)

To work with trampers, climbers and other public users in respecting the natural and cultural values of mountains in the Park.

6.3.2(d)

Fishing for sports fish legally present in the waters of the Park will be allowed, in accordance with Fish and Game Council regulations.

¹ The boundaries of the recreational opportunity settings have been plotted at 1:50,000 scale and can be viewed at this scale at the Waimakariri Area and Canterbury Conservancy Offices.

Explanation

Notes:

1. Public access and use through sporting events, whether commercial or otherwise, is provided for in 6.4.5 Sporting Events.

2. Recreational hunting is provided for in 6.2.5 Introduced Animals.

6.3.2(a) - National parks are established in law to preserve natural values in perpetuity (see 1.2.1 The National Parks Act 1980) for their intrinsic worth and for the benefit, use and enjoyment of the public. The public have the right of access to all areas of the Park. It may however, be necessary to manage the method or amount of access to avoid compromising the Park's natural, historic and cultural values and to maintain the range of public user experiences, such as the enjoyment, inspiration, solitude or experiencing the natural quiet of an area. An individual person's abilities will also influence their degree of access to areas of the Park.

Services and facilities provided by the Department, concessionaires, or clubs include:

- intentions books (located at the Visitor Centre, huts and track ends);
- weather forecasts;
- mountain and bush safety and leadership instruction;
- search and rescue, under the control of the New Zealand Police;
- information on routes and current climbing conditions;
- radio contact with some huts; and
- the facilities listed in 6.3.3 Public Facilities.

Sometimes an activity may appear to be consistent with the policies and objectives of this plan, but its potential adverse effects may not be known until some time after it has commenced. It is in these potential situations and where no satisfactory information on the activity can be found from the users or other New Zealand or overseas sources, that a precautionary approach may be required.

A monitoring programme needs to be established before or as soon as a new activity commences, with the results recorded and analysed. If the adverse effects are found to be unacceptable and cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated, then this is a situation where the Department could recommend to the Minister that the activity be controlled or prohibited through Park bylaws.

The public are responsible for the decisions that they make on the risks they are prepared to take and for ensuring that they, and generally those in their care, have the skills, competence and equipment required to cope with those risks (see 6.3.5 Public Safety and Emergency Services).

Management of access and use may involve limiting numbers to, or closing, specific areas of the Park for certain periods.

Closing a part of the Park can be legally enforced if need be, but restricting access is more likely to occur by seeking public co-operation through the use of signs and information (e.g. when a track or other facility is damaged by natural events).

6.3.2(b) - Recreation opportunity settings provide a framework for managing a range of recreational use experiences. Managing access within each recreational opportunity setting is one way of helping maintain a range of public experience. For example, the Punchbowl Falls track has recently been re-built to a standard that enables large groups of visitors, who may be inexperienced in the outdoors, to walk up and view the waterfall.

The recreational opportunity settings shown on Figures 4 and 4A and described in Table 5 have been chosen in conformity with *The New Zealand Recreational Opportunity Spectrum Guideline for Users* (1993), which includes consideration of the existing means of physical access (car/bus, 4 x 4 vehicle, aircraft or foot), of existing public activities and of existing facilities.

Public groups occasionally exceed the maximum party size set out in Table 5. Both the Department and Federated Mountain Clubs encourage clubs, schools and others to avoid these large party sizes.

The recreational opportunity setting shown through the Bealey and Otira valleys' corridor does not apply to the State Highway or non-National Park lands - see section 7.2.9 State Highway 73 and 7.2.13 Otira and Arthur's Pass villages and Bealey Spur Settlement.

6.3.2(c) - Generally there is a high degree of respect shown by the tramping and climbing community and others for and strong support given to the Park and its mountains, but there are two issues.

Various mountains are regarded by Ngāi Tahu as atua (gods), tupuna (ancestors) or tipua (revered being) and are waahi taoka or treasured places and therefore deserving of special respect.

Climbing in the Park has involved a small amount of bolting for climber protection, although the generally unstable nature of the Park's rock has not attracted much rock climber attention. There are ethical and legal issues about using bolts, or other forms of 'permanent' anchors, particularly within a national park where the preservation of natural values is paramount.

6.3.2(d) Salmon and trout are now a widely recognised regional recreational resource. Trout are fished for in the Park, both in the Waimakariri and Taramakau catchments. The General Policy for National Parks allows sports fishing as in accordance with Policy 6.3.2(d).

Methods

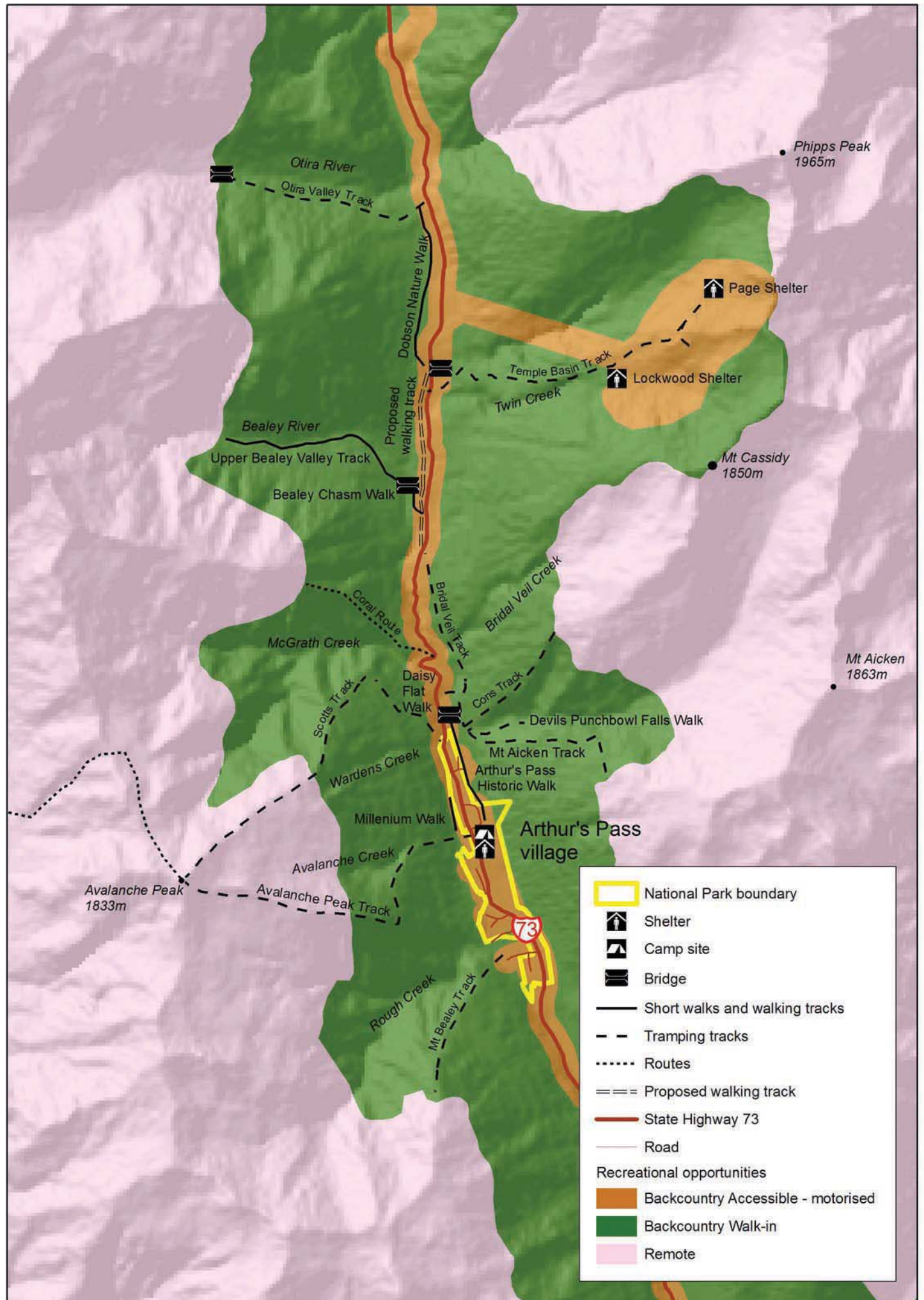
6.3.2(b)

- 1. Apply the recreational opportunity settings as in Figures 4 and 4A when considering facility developments and maintenance, or other Park management and when processing concession applications.**
- 2. Encourage in conjunction with Federated Mountain Clubs, that public groups, including club and school groups, respect the desired maximum party sizes set out in Table 5.**

6.3.2(c)

- 1. In respect of summit climbing within the Park, where relevant interpretation and information is being provided, work with Ngāi Tahu to explain the Ngāi Tahu values for mountains and to encourage respect for these values.**
- 2. Bolting in the Park should generally be discouraged, but may, prior to the bolting, be approved by the Area Manager where:**
 - i. potential effects on the Park's natural values, existing recreational opportunities and Departmental liability have been assessed and found to be minor or nil;**
 - ii. the proposed bolting meets a code of practice developed by the climbing fraternity (e.g. the New Zealand Alpine Club Bolting Policy (2005)) and approved by the Department for use in the Park; and**
 - iii. bolting would be a less-obtrusive and/or safer option than other forms of permanent or temporary protection.**

Figure 4A: Recreational opportunities and public facilities



0 0.5 1 Km

Fig 4: Recreational opportunities and public facilities

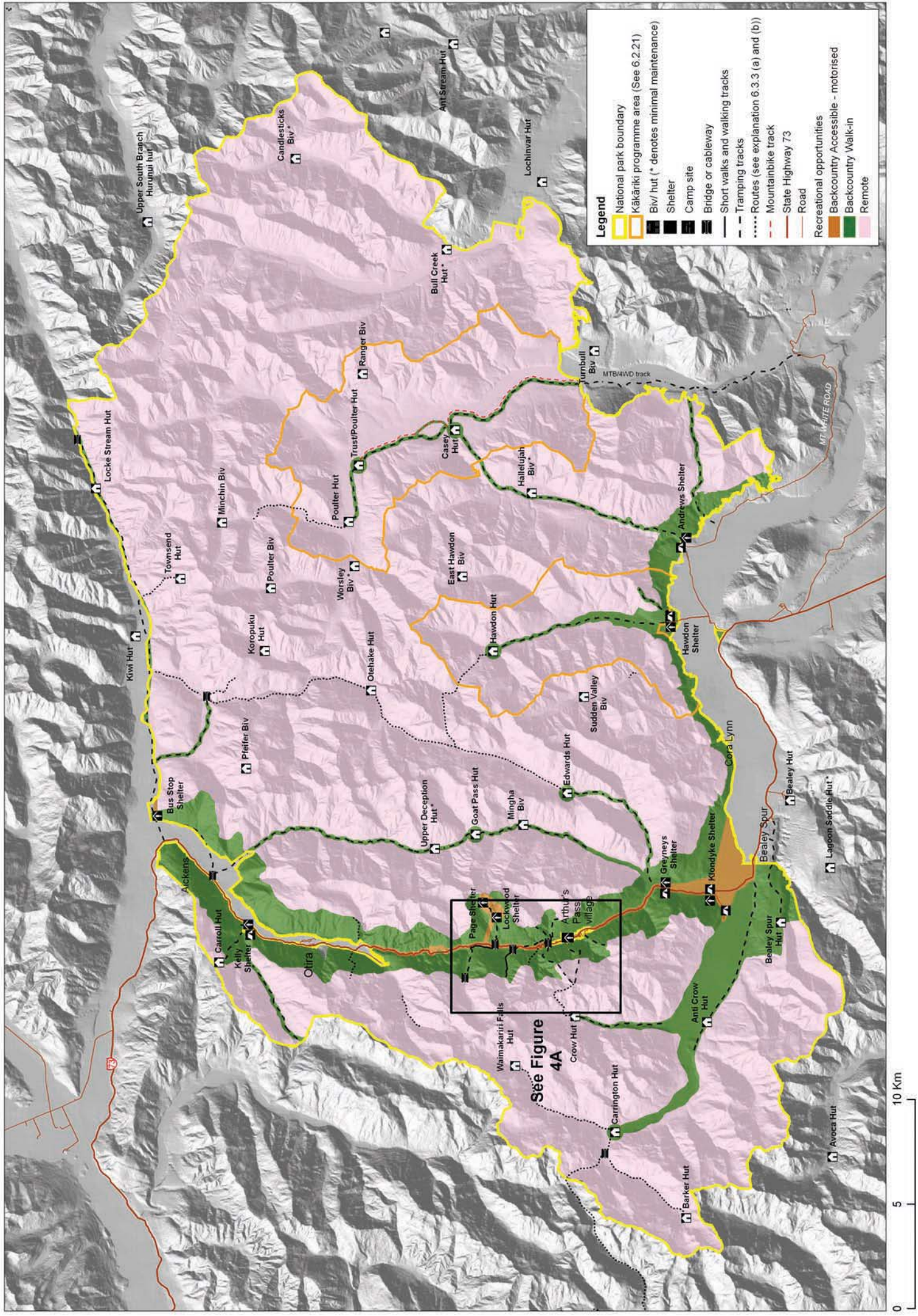


Table 5: Recreational Opportunity Settings Description and Criteria¹

	Backcountry Accessible -Motorised	Backcountry Walk-in	Remote
General Description	Large scale natural settings more accessible by proximity (within 2 hours walking) to State Highway 73 and minor roads. At times the visitor number interactions and unnatural noise may be at a level that prevents a sense of isolation for most visitors.	Typically popular walks/tramps within the body of a large scale natural setting. Some facilities provided. Level of use varies. At times the visitor numbers and interactions may be at a frequency to prevent a sense of isolation for most visitors.	Typically the untracked or low use bulk of the backcountry. Minimal facilities. Level of use is low and likely to result in achieving a sense of isolation or remoteness for many visitors.
Accessibility	On- and off-track terrain more accessible by being close to roads.	May involve over 1-2 hours walking along a track from a vehicle; this is dependent on topography.	Generally accessible by over 5 hours walking along a track, or a lesser time where off-track travel requires outdoor skills and heightened risk acceptance, and where the level of use is low and likely to result in achieving a sense of isolation or remoteness for many visitors.
Predominant DOC visitor groups	Day visitors, backcountry comfort seekers and others in transit.	Backcountry comfort seekers, bc adventurers and remoteness seekers in transit.	Backcountry adventurers and remoteness seekers.
Facility Setting	All track, hut and backcountry facility types. A range of road and transport facilities may be available.	Walks, tramping tracks and routes. All backcountry hut and facility types.	Tramping tracks and routes. Usually only basic hut and facility types.
Visitor Numbers (progressively decrease across the Spectrum)	These areas are still relatively accessible, but require a longer time commitment. Group sizes of 4-5 are still typical. These sites may also be popular destinations for school parties, club outings etc as well as day-trip guided parties.	Visitors may have traveled some distance on foot to reach these backcountry settings. Typical group sizes will have reduced and be more spread out. Organized groups (e.g. clubs or guided parties) will occasionally be encountered.	These areas require significant time, physical ability and backcountry skill and experience. This Zone will have relatively few visitors in small, widely spaced groups.
Maximum party size	Maximum party size 15 ²	Maximum party size 15	Maximum party size 8
Visitor interactions and expectations	Interactions with others will still be likely, and subject to seasonal, weekend and weather-dependent variations Visitors bring an expectation of experiencing time away from other groups.	Visitors bring an expectation of experiencing time away from other groups but the visit duration is highly variable (it could be a 4 hour walk, or a 3-day or longer climbing/tramping trip).	Visitors will be actively seeking a sense of solitude. Acceptable visitor interactions can be expected to decline rapidly and are most likely to occur at huts.
Typical visit duration	2 hrs to 2 days	2 hrs -3 days	1 - 3+ days
Expected visitor interaction levels	Interaction rate of < 15 parties per 2 hours of visit.	Interaction rate of < 15 parties per visit.	Interaction rate of < 5 parties per visit.
Concessionaire operations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Concessionaire activity allowed in all ROS settings, subject to conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects, including compliance with the criteria within this Table 5, except as provided for under 6.4.7 Guiding, Mountain and Bush Craft Instruction and approved under 6.4.5 Sporting Events.. Concessionaire client activities not to be advantaged or disadvantaged compared with those for non-concessionaire visitors, unless there is a clear specified reason for different visitor type management (e.g. for waste disposal at regularly used sites). 		
Concessionaire effects management	Avoid and mitigate effects.	Avoid effects as far as possible. Concessionaires, individually and collectively, should be required to not exceed 50% occupancy of a hut's sleeping capacity, or a lesser percentage where small huts and bivvies are involved.	Concessionaire activity to be indistinguishable from other approved activities.
Aircraft management	Aircraft access for visitor use purposes should not be approved other than in accordance with 6.4.8 Aircraft		
Management for perceptions of crowding and noise effects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Undertake visitor surveys to determine annoyance levels, and undertake management to achieve 25% or less of visitor annoyance. The <25% figure should be applied across all ROS settings, irrespective of differing visitor numbers, due to the different experience expectations by visitors to each ROS setting. 		
Natural quiet and natural views	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Natural quiet and natural views are values that should be promoted across all ROS settings. 		

¹ This table is derived from the full range of characteristics in *The New Zealand Recreational Opportunity Spectrum – Guidelines for Users* (1983), with notes added to show any specific criteria set out in this Management Plan.

² For Backcountry accessible – motorised, while large groups may arrive by bus they should break into parties of no more than 15 to travel within this zone.

6.3.3 Public Facilities

Policies

6.3.3(a)

To provide facilities² in accordance with Tables 6, 7 and 8 that:

- i. facilitate the safe use and enjoyment of the Park by the public;**
- ii. minimise the impact on the environment, natural (including scenic) and historic character and natural values of the Park;**
- iii. do not compromise existing activities as provided for in the Plan, or public enjoyment of the Park;**
- iv. cannot be more appropriately or suitably located outside the Park;**
- v. respect the spiritual and cultural values of those associated with the Park;**
- vi. comply with the recreational opportunity settings as set by Policy 6.3.2(b);**
- vii. encourage a high degree of self-reliance by the public and self-awareness of safety issues;**
- viii. meet the Department's national policies and standards for public facilities; and**
- ix. may be funded by donations from people and organisations.**

6.3.3(b)

To make all Park huts³ available to the public on a first-come, first-served basis⁴.

6.3.3(c)

Hut sites, additional to those of the current Park huts, should be limited to:

- i. an existing hut site becoming unsafe for any reason and requiring relocation of the hut to a new site;**
- ii. a temporary requirement for a hut for Park management purposes⁵, authorised by the Department; or**
- iii. the sites of the existing club and school lodges covered by Policy 6.4.6.**

In all cases, Park huts will meet the Department's hut standards, fee structure and be consistent with the design principles for new and existing buildings.

² See Glossary definition, but noting that roads and vehicle facilities are covered under section 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles.

³ The term "Park huts" means the public and club huts managed by the Department and the Canterbury Mountaineering Club.

⁴ See also Table 5.

⁵ This may include a hut for a community organised programme for predator control (see 6.2.5 Introduced Animals, Key to Table 3, point 9).

6.3.3(d)

Concessionaire facilities other than those covered by Policy 6.4.6, including huts or equipment storage lockers, should not be approved, whether proposed to be sited away from, or at, hut sites or within park huts.

6.3.3(e)

No serviced campsite⁶ should be established in the Park.

6.3.3(f)

To recognise the historic and cultural significance of ara hiko through the Park.

6.3.3(g)

To better recognise the value of the Mingha-Deception as a New Zealand classic trans-alpine tramping track.

Explanation

6.3.3(a) to (e) - National Parks are intended to be readily accessible so that the public may enjoy and gain inspiration from the park environment. The National Parks Act 1980 allows for the establishment of facilities and services either by the Department or, under a concession or section 50 permit, by concessionaries and recreational clubs.

National park facilities cannot be considered in isolation from the Department's wider national responsibilities. Throughout 2003/04 the Department conducted a national review of public facilities on conservation lands as part of its recreation opportunities review (ROR) - see *Towards a better network of visitor facilities* (2003). The review took into account:

- legislative requirements, including those of the Building Act;
- available Government funding and facility lifecycle modelling;
- statutory policy (General Policy for National Parks, Conservation management strategies, national park management plans); and
- non-statutory Department policy (Visitor Strategy (1996), i.e. the Department's visitor assets management programme which identifies visitor sites, service standards and principles for hut and track classifications developed in consultation with national interest groups).

The Canterbury outcome of the review was published in *Canterbury Conservancy recreation opportunities review, submission analysis and decisions* (2004). The ROR outcomes are given statutory effect through conservation management strategies (CMSs) and national park and conservation management plans; the CMS and plan review processes provide opportunities to reconsider the ROR outcomes. The very recent nature of the ROR should mean that little review consideration is required through this Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan. Nevertheless some considerations have been identified, including:

- confirmation of hut locations within the Park;

⁶ See Glossary for "serviced campsite" definition.

- confirmation of Hawdon Hut replacement;
- deciding the future of Ranger Biv;
- the number of huts in the Poulter valley and specifically the use of the Trust/Poulter Hut;
- increases or decreases in hut size should there be a need to replace or significantly refurbish huts over the life of this Plan;
- the level of hut service to be provided e.g. basic, standard or serviced;
- facilities (primarily sign posting) associated with any Poulter valley mountain bike track (see 6.3.6.1); and
- confirming track and route classifications, as those terms are used in the ROR outcomes.

These considerations are all dealt with in Tables 6, 7 and 8 for existing facilities (as at 2007) and shown on Figures 4 and 4A, with a special discussion below for Ranger Biv.

Consultation with the community that use the Park has been an important feature of the facilities' review and needs to be continued.

Short walks, walking tracks, tramping tracks and routes

The public generally has a free right of entry and freedom to use the Park, including via the range of foot access provided. Greater use and enjoyment of the Park can be gained if foot access is provided along with associated overnight accommodation and interpretation facilities, while still recognising the need to provide for a range of recreational opportunities (see 6.3.2 Public Access and Use).

The Department has assisted the development of and adopted *SNZ HB 8630:2004 New Zealand Handbook Tracks and Outdoor Visitor Structures* (2004). This Standard handbook provides the specification for the design, construction and maintenance of short walks, walking tracks, tramping tracks and routes within the Park⁷

Te Araroa Trust Inc. in developing the concept of "Te Araroa - The Long Pathway", has a Memorandum of Understanding with the Department (dated 04 October 2002), which fosters a working relationship, requires consistency with the Plan, and clarifies ownership and management responsibility for any facilities along the Pathway.

Huts and bivvies

A series of huts and bivvies have been developed throughout the Park over the years by mountaineering clubs and by public agencies. Since the Department's formation in 1987 one hut (Greenlaw) has been lost through structural damage, one replacement hut built (Crow), one new hut added (Poulter), several huts refurbished and one lost through fire (Hawdon, in June 2005).

Two huts (Barker and Waimakariri Falls) are owned and managed by the Canterbury Mountaineering Club as public-use huts. The Waimakariri Falls Hut

⁷ Note that in accordance with this Standard, tracks are maintained tracks and routes are marked routes. There are many other not-maintained 'tracks' and unmarked 'routes' within the Park, often formed by usage or well known through old Park maps and books, but these will not be maintained as "tracks" or "routes" under the Standard, or shown in the Department's published information.

was gifted to the Club as part of the Park's 75th anniversary, in recognition of the Club's desire to continue its community contribution within the Park.

Most huts serve an important function as bases for tramping, climbing and hunting activities, shelter during adverse weather conditions and for Park management. Because others did not adequately fulfil this role due to their location and/or standards, and/or because they were located in the more-remote north-eastern part of the Park, the ROR process (see above) led to a recommendation for their removal (undertaken in October 2005) or for minimal maintenance.

The value of huts can often be greater than their use as simply a shelter or base, and due to cultural or historic reasons some huts have become a destination in their own right'.

Park hut fees are levied in accordance with a national hut fee system, as either basic (free), standard (fee paid) or serviced (a higher fee paid).

Hut wardens, both volunteers and seasonal staff, will be used to encourage fee compliance, as well as undertaking facility and track maintenance. New huts may include warden's quarters (see Table 7).

There is no current undue pressure from over-use placed on huts within the Park and this is not expected to change during the ten-year life of this Plan. No hut booking system and no additional huts (Park huts or concessionaire provided) are seen as necessary other than in accordance with policy 6.3.3(c).

Use of the Trust/Poulter hut may be primarily for Park management purposes – see 6.2.2.1, specifically Method 6.2.2.1(a) & (b)5.

Camping

Camping in the Park away from formed roads is an accepted recreation activity, the nature of the Park providing many opportunities for this. The Park Bylaws (see Appendix A) require that all areas on which camping occur be left clean and tidy after use.

Camping (which includes staying overnight in vehicles, as defined in the Bylaws interpretation for “camp”) needs to be managed in order to avoid conflict with park values and other activities. Park Bylaw 5 prohibits camping within 200 metres of a formed road, unless the Department has given prior permission. The Department's intention is to maintain sites for camping where terrain is suitable, shelter exists and basic facilities can be provided. Sites for camping will have as minimum, toilets, water supply (albeit a nearby stream) and vehicle access. Campers seeking a wider range of facilities will need to use motor camps outside the Park.

Bylaw 5 also requires that no person may camp in the Park for more than 14 consecutive days without the consent of the Department.

Bylaw 5A prohibits camping within a 100 metre radius of any hut, or in an emergency shelter (e.g. Lockwood Shelter at Temple Basin). This bylaw provision can be over-ridden if any part of the area is appropriated (see Bylaw 2, “Camping site”) as a camping site under the National Parks Act, or the place is an emergency shelter and camping in the shelter occurs in an emergency.

There may be occasions when, to avoid the deterioration of natural areas or of visitor experiences through overuse, specified areas are closed to all camping by applying Park Bylaw 5A. Generally however, camping beside huts is

currently not a problem and indeed is often encouraged to minimise impacts at sites for camping and allow for hut toilet use.

Where campers use hut or public shelter facilities then the Department is justified in charging either a proportion of the relevant hut fee or a camping facilities fee.

The Department-provided sites for camping alongside State Highway 73, both in and east and west of the Park, supplement serviced campgrounds provided by councils and landowners in the region and there is no need to match this serviced standard within the Park. The Department is considering improvements to the Klondyke Corner sites for camping. This is a highly visible site from the State Highway entranceway to the Park (see 7.2.7 Landscape Management) and will need sensitivity, especially if providing for the visually dominant white campervans.

Picnicking

Picnicking normally occurs close to roads or paths and walking tracks. Alongside roads, picnic areas tend to be associated with parking areas and with use by day visitors; where necessary, toilets could be associated with such facilities.

A consequence of the increasing use of State Highway 73 is that additional facilities for day visitors are likely to be required, the majority of which can be provided in the vicinity of the State Highway.

Donated Facilities

The strong association of many people with the Park has resulted in periodic donations and bequests for facilities and it is realistic to expect more such actions. These facilities are distinct from memorials (see Policy 6.2.4(g)) and are governed by Policy 8.1(h) of the *General Policy for National Parks*. Where there is a need for a facility, donated facilities are an appropriate way of recognising community associations with the Park.

Concessionaire Facilities

Parties guided by concessionaires operate within the Park, sometimes camping and sometimes using Park huts. Concessions are required to not exceed a maximum 50% hut occupancy, but this has less meaning when small huts are used. There has been one concessionaire-operated/owned facility in the Park, i.e. a camping equipment storage locker (by concession condition, not larger than 4 sq m, but in reality a small hut), which was close to and visible from Crow Hut. The facility was for use by guided parties who therefore did not have to rely on the carrying of overnight equipment, although they did use Crow Hut in emergencies. Other potential concessionaire interest has been expressed for similar storage facilities and/or toilets at proposed or current camp sites elsewhere in the Park. These requests have been declined to date. The Crow facility and the other requests raise the issue of the appropriate balance between providing for a range of experiences and maintaining an ethos of self-reliance, as set out in *General Policy* 8.1(c), and the issue of minimising adverse effects generally, as set out in *General Policy* 10.1(c).

6.3.3(g) - The old Māori pathways, ara hikoi, that traverse sections of the Park are of special significance in that they provide a material link with the traditional past as well as sustaining the culture that developed around them. Their frequent mention in Te Waipounamu/South Island history references

highlights their historical and cultural value to both Ngāi Tahu and Pakeha. The routes are still known and some place names still exist.

6.3.3(h) - The Mingha-Deception track is one of very few trans-alpine recreational opportunities that can be tramped in two days or run in one day without high levels of backcountry skills. It show-cases just about the full range of environments within the Park across the Main Divide. Tramping use and the Coast to Coast event have impacted on the original route to the extent that major track-works have been undertaken and ongoing maintenance will be required. This has raised the track standard and attracted wider public use. While the ‘track’ standard varies from open riverbed to boardwalk or constructed track, and will not always meet the “tramping track” standard, the intention is to manage it as a tramping track as far as possible. Further development of a track alongside the upper Deception riverbed, along with stoat trapping (see Policy 6.2.2(d)) would reduce impacts on whio/blue duck.

Table 6: Short Walks, Walking Tracks, Tramping Tracks, Routes and Bridges/Cableway within the Park

Name	Management / Comments
Short walks	
Arthur’s Pass village historic walk	Maintain
Bealey Chasm	Maintain
Daisy Flat	Maintain
Devils Punchbowl Falls	Maintain
Dobson Nature walk	Maintain
Millennium walk	Maintain, to Glasgow Bridge, in AP village
Old Coach Road	Maintain, near Greyneys
Walking tracks	
Bealey Spur	Maintain, to hut
Bridal Veil	Maintain
Bridal Veil extension	Proposed, to Temple Basin car-park, west of SH73
Cockayne Nature walk	Maintain
Upper Bealey valley	Maintain
Tramping tracks	
Andrews valley	Maintain, Shelter to Casey Hut
Avalanche Peak	Maintain, to summit; above bush-line may not comply with track standard due to terrain and seasonal snow conditions
Bealey Bridge to Anti Crow	Maintain, to west edge of fan
Binser Saddle	Maintain
Carroll	Maintain, Kelly Shelter to ridge top
Casey to Poulter Hut	Maintain
Cons	Maintain, to bush line
Crow valley	Maintain, from valley opening to Hut
Deception valley	Maintain; not all will comply with track standard, due to river crossings; further develop track alongside upper Deception riverbed
Edwards valley	Maintain, Mingha valley to Edwards Hut
Hawdon valley	Maintain, Shelter to Hut
Kellys Creek	Maintain, to Hunt Saddle
Lake Kaurapataka	Maintain, to Otehake riverbed
Lockwood Shelter to Cassidy Basin	Maintain
Mingha	Maintain, riverbed to Hut/Goat Pass
Morrison Bridge to Pfeifer Ck	Maintain
Mount Aicken	Maintain, to bush line
Mount Bealey	Maintain, to bush line
Otira valley	Maintain, to foot bridge

Pfeifer Ck to Harper Pass	Maintain; not all can comply with track standard
Poulter valley	Maintain, Park boundary to Casey Hut
Scotts	Maintain, to Avalanche Peak summit; above bush-line may not comply with track standard due to terrain and seasonal snow conditions
Temple Basin	Maintain, SH 73 to Lockwood Shelter
Temple Basin high level	Maintain, part of TB concession (see 7.2.12 Temple Basin ...)
Woolshed Hill	Maintain
Routes	
Avalanche Peak to Crow Hut	Maintain
Barrack Creek	Maintain, to bush line
Carrington to Barker Hut	Maintain
Coral	Maintain, to bush line
Carrington Hut to Harman Pass	Maintain, and beyond to Browning Pass/Noti Raureka
Carrington Hut to Waimakariri Falls Hut	Maintain
Edwards Hut to Hawdon Hut	Maintain; via Taruahuna Pass, Tarn Col, Walker Pass
Minchin valley	Maintain; Poulter valley to Linwood Creek
Mount Barron	Maintain, to bush line; also an historic feature
Otehake River	Maintain, Taruahuna Pass to Taramakau valley
Otehake to Big Tops	Maintain, to bush line
Rolleston valley	Maintain, past lower gorge
Sudden valley	Maintain, past gorge
Taramakau to Townsend	Maintain, to bush line and hut
Bridges & Cableway	
Bealey Bridge	Maintain
Clough Cableway (White Rr)	Maintain
Morrison Bridge (Otira Rr)	Maintain
Otehake Swing bridge	Maintain
Taramakau bridge (near Harper Pass)	Maintain
Punchbowl Bridge	Maintain

Table 7: Huts, Bivvies and Shelters within the Park

Name	Type	sl/cap	Management	Replacement/use policy (see note 1 below)
Huts & bivvies				
Anti Crow	Standard	6	Maintain	No replacement
Barker	Standard	10	Maintain by CMC	CMC decision
Bealey Spur	Basic	6	Maintain as historic hut	Replacement, if required, to be negotiated with the community
Bull Creek	Basic	4	Minimal Maintenance	No replacement
Candlesticks	Basic	1	Minimal Maintenance	No replacement
Carrington	Serviced	36	Maintain	Replace at 20 sl/cap, with wardens quarters
Carroll	Standard	10	Maintain	Replace as is
Casey	Serviced	16	Maintain	Replace as is, with wardens quarters
Crow	Standard	10	Maintain	Replace as is
East Hawdon	Basic	2	Maintain	Replace as is
Edwards	Serviced	16	Maintain	Replace as is, with wardens quarters
Goat Pass	Standard	20	Maintain	Replace at 20 sl/cap, with wardens quarters; may change location
Hallelujah	Basic	2	Minimal Maintenance	No replacement
Hawdon	Serviced	20	Maintain	Replace as is, with wardens quarters
Koropuku	Basic	4	Maintain	Replace as is
Locke	Standard	18	Maintain as historic	Replace if destroyed, sl/cap

Stream			hut	determined at the time
Minchin	Basic	2	Maintain	Replace with 4 sl/cap
Mingha	Basic	2	Maintain by C to C concessionaire	C to C funded stoat-trapping base; may replace with removable 2 sl/cap biv at alternative site(s).
Otehake	Standard	6	Maintain	Replace as is
Pfeifer	Basic	1	Maintain	Replace with 2 sl/cap
Poulter Bivvy	Basic	2	Maintain	Replace with 2 sl/cap
Poulter Hut	Standard	10	Maintain	Replace as is
Ranger	Basic	2	Maintain	Replace with 2 sl/cap
Sudden Valley	Basic	2	Maintain	Replace as is
Townsend	Basic	4	Maintain	Replace as is
Trust/Poulter	Standard	6	Maintain, possibly at another site	Primarily management purposes base (see Method 6.2.2.1(a) & (b) 5); replacement dependent on management needs; removal if not needed for management purposes.
Upper Deception	Basic	6	Maintain by C to C concessionaire	Replace as is; reassess location.
Waimakariri Falls	Basic	6	Maintain by CMC	CMC decision; replacement subject to avalanche safety assessment
Worsley	Basic	4	Minimal Maintenance	No replacement
Shelters				
Andrews			Maintain	Replace as is
Avalanche Creek (see note 2 below)			Maintain	Replace as is
Bus stop			Maintain	Replace as is
Greyneys			Maintain	Replace as is
Hawdon			Maintain	Replace as is
Kelly			To be reviewed	Reassess needs in area
Klondyke			Maintain	Replace as is
Lockwood			To be reviewed	Reassess needs in area
Page			Maintain, part of TB concession (see 7.2.12)	TB concessionaire's decision

Note 1: The "Replacement/use policy" reflects current (2005/06) programmed and future building replacements (with any sleeping capacity changes), action that would be taken should a building be destroyed (e.g. by fire or avalanche), use primarily for Park management purposes and management by other than the Department.

Note 2: This shelter is on public conservation land that is not part of the Park, but is seen as serving the public visiting the Park

Table 8: Car Parks, Amenity Areas and Sites for Camping within the Park

Name	Management (see notes below)
Carparks	
Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre	Maintain
Bealey Chasm	Maintain
Devils Punchbowl	Maintain and landscape
Greyneys Shelter	Maintain, see (1)

Mingha Bluffs	Maintain, see (1)
Mt Rolleston lookout	Close and remove for road safety reasons, see (2).
Temple Basin	Maintain, see Method 7.2.9(e).
Upper Otira	Maintain
Amenity areas	
Andrews Shelter	Maintain
Arthur's Pass picnic area	Maintain, by Visitor Centre
Avalanche Creek	Maintain, by Arthur's Pass Shelter
Bealey Bridge	Maintain, at south end SH 73 bridge
Greyneys	Maintain, see (1)
Hawdon	Maintain
Klondyke Corner	Maintain, on eastern side of SH 73
Old Bealey Hotel site	Maintain
Sites for Camping	
Andrews	Maintain; change to "standard" site for camping (3)
Avalanche Creek (see note 4 below)	Maintain; continue as "standard" site for camping (3)
Greyneys	Maintain; change to "standard" site for camping (3)
Hawdon	Maintain; change to "standard" site for camping (3)
Kelly	Maintain
Klondyke Corner	Maintain; change to "standard" site for camping (3); re-design on western side of SH 73; shorten western road to near current toilets; new toilets; clarify location of long-term (e.g. tramper) car parking and sites for camping. Note attention to entranceway landscape values (see 7.2.7 Landscape Management), especially if providing for campervans.

Notes:

1. The need for an amenity area and car parking, and possibly non-vehicle-based camping (i.e. for people going into or coming out of the Mingha/Edwards and using public transport) is recognised for the Greyneys/Mingha Bluffs vicinity. Other areas provide for vehicle-based camping. This need will be kept in mind when State Highway 73 realignments are being considered - see 7.2.9 State Highway 73.
2. The proposed Bridal Veil extension walking track (see Table 4) will enable walkers to have a more elevated lookout to Mt Rolleston.
3. "Standard" site for camping involve paying a use fee.
4. This site for camping is on public conservation land that is not part of the Park, but is seen as serving the public visiting the Park.

Methods

6.3.3(a), (b), (c) & (d)

- 1. All proposed new or upgraded facilities should be subject to an assessment of environmental effects, including an assessment of potential landscape effects.**
- 2. In all public facility development other than in the backcountry walk-in and remote settings (see Figure 4), but including roadside shelters, the needs of people with disabilities will be considered during the planning and design stages. When the terrain lends itself to appropriate development, amenities may be provided specifically for people with disabilities.**
- 3. Where tramping tracks and routes link with adjoining public conservation lands outside the Park, liaison will be maintained within the Department and with public interest groups to ensure that facility provisions are integrated along the length of the route (e.g. Harman Pass to “The Three Pass Trip”, Taramakau River to Hurunui River).**
- 4. Climbers, hunters, skiers and trampers who camp out will be encouraged, through the New Zealand Environmental Care Code, toitu te whenua (1991), Park Visitor Centre information and hut notices, to leave campsites in a clean and tidy condition. Open fires are permitted, but must be in accordance with 6.2.8 Fire Control.**
- 5. Continue to work with public interest groups through the implementation of Policies 6.3.3(a) to (g).**
- 6. Barker and Waimakariri huts should continue to be authorised as Canterbury Mountaineering Club owned huts in terms of section 50 of the National Parks Act 1980, subject to the Department hut standards and Policies 6.3.3(b) and (c).**
- 7. Designate the existing camping sites in Table 8, through appropriate signage, and allow for associated vehicle use, in accordance with the Arthur’s Pass National Park Bylaws 1981.**
- 8. Seek a Park Bylaws amendment to the effect that the surrounds of Park huts are appropriate as camping sites in terms of Bylaw 5A(2)(a).**
- 9. Apply the camping prohibitions within the Arthur’s Pass National Park Bylaws 1981 when camping is causing unacceptable adverse effects near huts and alongside formed roads.**
- 10. Where campers use hut facilities a camping fee, as a proportion of hut fees, should be charged.**
- 11. Seek a bylaw amendment to allow charging for the use of facilities at camping sites.**
- 12. Continue to utilise volunteers and seasonal staff as hut wardens to encourage fee compliance and undertake other Park management activities.**
- 13. See Method 6.2.2.1(a) & (b)5, regarding the Trust/Poulter Hut.**
- 14. Work with potential donors of facilities, in accordance with the General Policy, to identify and design suitable facilities.**

15. Continue to work with Te Araroa Trust Inc. in accordance with the MOU of 04 October 2002, in respect to the establishment of a national Pathway.

16. Seek that the Avalanche Creek shelter and camp site on public conservation land within Arthur's Pass village is managed as a public day shelter and as a "standard" camp site.

6.3.3(f)

Work with Ngāi Tahu to retain the memories and stories of the ara hikoī through methods such as interpretation panels on walking tracks and in huts along the old ara hikoī routes, and elsewhere (see 6.3.4 Information and Interpretation).

6.3.3(g)

For the Mingha/Deception track, in liaison with the Coast to Coast concessionaire:

- i. continue maintenance of the existing track;**
- ii. investigate and implement if feasible, further tracking alongside the upper Deception riverbed where this would further avoid disturbance of whio/blue duck; and**
- iii. highlight the national park values of the two valleys, through information provision to trampers, runners and Coast to Coast participants.**

6.3.4 Information and Interpretation

Policies

6.3.4(a)

To provide public information on the Park in a manner that promotes understanding of, and respect for, Park values.

6.3.4(b)

To interpret the Park's natural, historical and cultural heritage sites in a manner that promotes respect for Park values and the conservation management activities undertaken by the Department to protect these values, and promotes conservation awareness generally.

6.3.4(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional associations of Ngāi Tahu when managing interpretation projects in the Park and give effect to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for public information and historic resources.

6.3.4(d)

To enhance the experience and awareness of the public by providing high quality interpretation.

Explanation

6.3.4(a) - The provision of information and interpretation, aimed at many levels of understanding, are the primary means of educating the public about the Park's natural and other values (see 2 The Park, its Features and Heritage). Continued and increased awareness of the Park's values can help to ensure that future generations understand and protect these values.

The *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* provides the overall framework for interpretation for the Conservancy. Interpretation should be consistent with the *Strategy*.

The provision of information directed to public safety in the Park is addressed in 6.3.5 Public Safety and Emergency Services.

6.3.4(b) - The relationship between the natural, historical and cultural heritage of the Park provides an excellent interpretive opportunity. *The Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy* (2000) and the *Canterbury Conservancy Interpretation Plan* (2000) currently prioritise the production of interpretive media and ensure that consistency is maintained throughout the Conservancy. The *Interpretation Plan* follows the national interpretation themes of land-shaping, flora and fauna and human occupation.

6.3.4(c) - The actions required for the agreed Protocols with Ngāi Tahu, apply here. The Director-General is required to provide information to staff, Conservation Board members, concessionaires and the public about the Ngāi Tahu values. The Director-General is also required to provide relevant information and consult with Ngāi Tahu and have particular regard to their views, in relation to the provision of public information and to the management of historic resources.

As part of these processes, the Department will consult with tāngata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu before using Ngāi Tahu cultural information. The Department will also request that concessionaires consult with Ngāi Tahu (see 6.4.3 Concessions General).

6.3.4(d) - Understanding and appreciation of the Park can be increased by the provision of interpretive facilities and services. The main facility is the Park Visitor Centre in Arthur's Pass village with its displays and information desk, managed in accordance with the *Visitor and Information Centre Strategy* (2001). Other forms of interpretation reach out to the variety of visitors to the Park and include:

- publications, e.g. books, maps, pamphlets, posters, slide sets, video or digital images;
- computer, internet, film, video, or digital communications;
- public contact (e.g. the possible operation of guided tours as part of holiday programmes, concessionaire operations and educational visits);
- signpost marking of roads and tracks;
- interpretation panels at points of interest (e.g. at roadside carparks) and for the naming of flora;
- education programmes, such as those run by the Arthur's Pass Outdoor Education Centre and resources such as the "Super Site" resource for Temple Basin;
- an interpretation programme that raises awareness of natural, historic and cultural values in the Park, including Ngāi Tahu values: and
- encouraging artistic interpretation of the Park and its values, such as through the national Wild Creations Artists in Residence programme with Creative New Zealand.

Each method has its strengths and weaknesses depending on who is its audience. The public at various times during their stay have differing requirements. They may be seeking park information, or an understanding of the purposes of national parks, or safety education, ways to avoid damage to the Park, or to prevent offences. Design standards for interpretive material are set by the Department's national guidelines.

In addition, the Outdoor Education Centre in Arthur's Pass village operates educational activities within the Park.

Methods

6.3.4(b) & (d)

1. Key sites and topics for information and interpretation of the Park will be guided by the following Table 9:

Table 9: Information and Interpretation Sites and Topics

Site location	Topic
Hawdon & Poulter huts and shelters	Kākāriki Karaka / Orange-fronted parakeet programme
Old Bealey Hotel Site	Transport, seasonal occupation (Maori)
Bealey Spur Hut	Pastoralism
Waimakariri River / Bealey Bridge viewpoint	River processes, braided rivers, seasonal occupation (Maori)
Greyneys Flat	Transport
Arthur's Pass historic walk	Transport, building, settlement
Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre	Glaciation; tectonics; seasonal occupation (Maori); ara hikoi, exploration, mountain ecology, weather, Maori; the national park heritage, the 1 st South Island national park; recreational history
Bridal Veil & Punchbowl Falls	Water, Maori values, mountain ecology
Scotts Track	Forest remnants, timber props for Otira tunnel
Dobson Nature Walk / Memorials / Temple Basin	Mountain ecology, glaciation, tectonics, exploration, plants, Maori values
Otira Lookout (Death Corner)	Transport, mountain ecology
Cockayne Nature Walk	Mountain ecology, exploration
Locke Stream Hut	Hurunui – Harper Pass – Taramakau ara hikoi, exploration and travel

2. Through the opportunities available to them during their approved activities, concessionaires should be required to promote the safe and enjoyable use of the Park and be encouraged to promote the purposes of national parks and the benefits of conservation generally.

6.3.4(c)

Consult with tāngata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values, in relation to providing information about Ngāi Tahu values of the Park. “Consult” includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Department’s Protocols with Ngāi Tahu.

6.3.5 Public Safety and Emergency Services

Policies

6.3.5(a)

To inform the public and concessionaires, as far as practicable, of potential natural hazards in the Park and to create an awareness and understanding of natural hazards, while recognising that people will be primarily responsible for their own safety.

6.3.5(b)

To co-operate fully with the New Zealand Police in search and rescue and with the civil defence, fire, ambulance, State Highway safety and other safety and health authorities.

6.3.5(c)

To provide Department expertise, as far as is practicable and necessary, to assist with emergency operations involving public safety.

6.3.5(d)

To encourage public use of portable radio transmitters and personal locator beacons for safety purposes.

Explanation

6.3.5(a), (b) & (c). - There is an element of risk for all users of the Park and it would be impractical to remove that risk entirely, although the high incidence of fatalities within the Bealey/upper Otira area needs attention. Each person must be responsible for their own safety. Park managers contribute to safety through signage, facility design and other types of information and education and need to particularly address the Bealey/upper Otira higher risk area. The Department applies safety and health standards when managing facilities. It also provides equipment, such as hut radios.

Where a person's own resources prove inadequate to handling a situation, or where an accident occurs, a public service is provided to assist.

6.3.5(b) & (c) - Other authorities involved in ensuring public safety and good health and the Department's interaction with them are:

- the New Zealand Police, who have responsibility for all search and rescue and for road safety and control. The Park is within the Christchurch and Tasman Police Districts and there is a police officer stationed at Arthur's Pass;
- Westland and Selwyn District Councils as local Civil Defence organisations with responsibilities for public safety in the event of a civil emergency;
- Westland and Selwyn District Councils and the Canterbury and West Coast District Health Boards, with responsibilities for public health matters;
- the Civil Aviation Authority, which is responsible for aviation safety;
- Transit New Zealand, as the authority responsible for the maintenance and safe and efficient operation of State Highway 73;

- New Zealand Railways Corporation (trading as ONTRACK), as the authority responsible for the maintenance and safe and efficient operation of the Midland Railway; and
- Park concessionaires.

6.3.5(d) - For the safety of Park users a radio network has been established linking several huts to the Park Visitor Centre.

Lightweight mountain radios and personal locator beacons are increasingly proving their worth in emergency situations, including reducing personnel and other resource needs for searches. These devices can now be readily hired or purchased. Advice is provided at the Park Visitor Centre and elsewhere on mountain radios and personal locator beacons and their availability for hire.

6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles

Policies

6.3.6(a)

To maintain existing Park formed roads, parking areas and associated signposts where this is environmentally and physically feasible, and they do not pose a safety hazard.

6.3.6(b)

Vehicles⁸ should be prohibited within the Park except:

- i. on formed roads leading to and at the car parks, amenity areas and campsites listed in Table 8;**
- ii. in emergency or search and rescue situations;**
- iii. for Park management purposes, but subject to Method 6.2.2.1(a) & (b)3vi;**
- iv. in accordance with Policies 6.4.10(a) and (b) for stone and gravel removal from riverbeds;**
- v. in accordance with 7.2.9 State Highway 73;**
- vi. in accordance with 7.2.11 Power Transmission to service power transmission facilities within active riverbeds where no reasonable alternative access is available; or**
- vii. for the purposes of a camping site at Klondyke Corner for the annual Coast to Coast concession event.**
- viii. in accordance with Policies 6.3.6(c) or 6.3.6(d).**

⁸ See Glossary definition.

6.3.6(c)

To allow non-motorised mountain bike use within the Poulter River valley in accordance with the following criteria:

- i. their use is confined to the track marked on Figure 4, being the former vehicle track up the Poulter valley from the Park boundary at Mt Brown Creek to Casey Stream, then a poled route within the active bed of Casey Stream and the Poulter River, then back onto the former vehicle track up-valley to the site of the Trust/Poulter Hut.**
- ii. the use is for an initial three-year trial period from the date of Plan approval (13 December 2007).**

6.3.6(d)

Concessions may be granted for concessionaire mountain bike use as in Policy 6.3.6(c), but should not be granted for overnight mountain bike use in the Park unless the monitoring under Policy 6.3.6(f) indicates that this may be acceptable, and should not be granted for any mountain bike sporting event.

6.3.6(e)

To monitor the use and effects of mountain bikes, including any non-compliance with Policy 6.3.6(c), during the three-year trial period.

6.3.6(f)

As a result of the monitoring under Policy 6.3.6(e) either:

- i. should the monitoring indicate minimal adverse effects on national park values and that the benefit, use and enjoyment of other people can be protected, then continue to allow the mountain bike use for the remaining term of the Plan, with ongoing monitoring if considered necessary; or**
- ii. should monitoring indicate significant adverse effects or other impacts then, in consultation with the Conservation Board, the following actions will be taken:**
 - (a) seek additional controls by way of voluntary agreement and/or bylaws to overcome the identified effects and/or impacts ; or**
 - (b) end the use forthwith.**

Explanation

6.3.6(a) This policy applies only to formed roads and parking areas constructed on National Park land. It does not apply to State Highway 73 (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73). Off-road parking areas for both overnight and day visitor use have been provided, generally in close proximity to popular walks, entrances to tracks and routes and to interpretation sites and in facility areas.

The existing Park roads are generally adequate to serve the needs of Park visitors. The roads are to the Hawdon shelter, at Klondyke Corner and at Kellys Creek.

Park roads are roads for the purposes of the Transport Act 1998 and the provisions of that Act apply.

6.3.6(b) The Park Bylaws (see Appendix A) prohibit vehicles in the Park except:

- on a formed road, including vehicle tracks;
- in appropriate parking places;
- as authorised in a concession;
- in an emergency; or
- where the Director-General of Conservation considers it necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration and control of the Park.

Off-road vehicle use needs to be kept to a minimum to protect the Park, especially its natural features and recreational opportunities.

See also 6.2.2.1 Hawdon and Poulter Valleys and Operation Ark, regarding the use of ATVs for Park management purposes.

6.3.6(c), (d), (e) & (f) - The General Policy allows for non-motorised mountain bike use on roads or routes within national parks, in accordance with an approved management plan, where adverse effects on national park values can be minimised, the track standard is suitable, and the benefit, use and enjoyment of other people can be protected.

The Poulter valley has been promoted by Mountain Bike New Zealand Inc. as one of a few potential biking opportunities within national parks. Its suitability is assisted by a 13 km track before reaching the Park boundary, with this track and the Park track providing a 54 km return ride along an existing Park management 4WD vehicle track. Primary use is likely as a day trip.

Mountain bike use up-valley of Trust/Poulter Hut, or on the Binsler and Casey Saddle side-tracks, or on the bush track immediately north of Casey Stream, is not to be allowed as these areas and tracks have well-established public use patterns for walking and the benefit, use and enjoyment for these other people would not be protected by allowing bike use.

As the proposed use is a new one within the Park, monitoring is required to identify any adverse effects. By limiting the use to an initial three-year trial period, any adverse effects that may emerge can be promptly dealt with, changes made to the use criteria if need be and the use endorsed or otherwise for at least the term of this Plan.

The mountain biking opportunity being created is essentially for day trip activity with limited overnight stays at Casey Hut or Trust/Poulter Hut, (noting Method 6.2.2.1(a) & (b)5). This should minimise any adverse affects on the benefit, use and enjoyment of the current public use within the valley. There are many opportunities for concessionaire-led mountain biking and for sports events outside the Park.

Methods

6.3.6(a)

1. Park roads and parking areas should as far as possible be maintained to provide adequate all-weather access into areas of the Park which have been set aside specifically for public use. Any roads or parking areas may however, be closed temporarily after snowfall, landslide, rock fall, earthquake, flood, fire, accident or similar incident.

2. Existing parking places will be formalised in terms of the National Parks Act 1980. New parking places may be formalised to allow for vehicle use in accordance with the Park Bylaws. Suitable locations should be identified having regard to the following matters:

- i. cultural sensitivity of the site and its environs;
- ii. the desirability of enhancing public enjoyment and appreciation of the Park's values;
- iii. safety of vehicular accessibility from existing roads, safety from rockfalls, avalanches and floods;
- iv. sensitivity of soils, plants, animals and natural landscape, historical and archaeological features in the vicinity; and
- v. proximity to camping sites, popular tracks and routes, short walks, picnic areas and day use areas.

3. Liaison should be maintained with Transit New Zealand and the Westland and Selwyn District Councils over the development and maintenance of parking areas adjoining State Highway 73 (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73) and district roads to complement Park facilities and retain natural and historic values.

4. Signposting should be of an informative, directional or hazard warning nature only. Signs with any element of advertising or promotion should not be permitted, unless approved as sponsorship under Policy 6.4.5 Sporting Events, and then only where no damage to Park features would be caused by their erection and only for the duration of the event.

6.3.6(b)

1. Through the use of signs and other public information, and fences, gates or other physical barriers, clearly show where public vehicle use is prohibited on vehicle tracks formed or intended for Park management purposes only, subject to Method 6.3.6(c)1.

2. For future management of unformed legal roads within the general Park boundaries see Policy 6.2.9 Boundaries and Park Additions.

3. For access through the Park to private or leased land see Policy 6.4.3 Concessions General.

4. Establish guidelines for Department ATV use within the Hawdon and Poulter valleys to avoid any adverse effects on Park values and to avoid mountain bike users following any ATV tracks that may depart from the allowed mountain bike route set out in Policy 6.3.6(c).

6.3.6(c)

- 1. Seek an amendment to the Arthur's Pass National Park Bylaws 1981, clause 9, to allow for the above non-motorised mountain bike use.**
- 2. In conjunction with Mountain Bike New Zealand Inc. provide information to the public on the allowable mountain bike use within the Park.**
- 3. By means of signs, clearly identify the limits of the Poulter valley mountain bike track.**

6.3.6(e)

Establish and run a monitoring programme, seeking the support of recreational users, to record, inter alia, the following:

- i. the degree of any pre-trial mountain bike use, albeit unauthorised;**
- ii degree of mountain bike use of the track;**
- iii. absence or presence of mountain bike activity off or beyond the allowed track;**
- iv. any biophysical impacts;**
- v. any enforcement incidents and their outcomes;**
- vi. any damage to or removal of signs; and**
- vii. Casey Hut and Trust/Poulter Hut use and any conflicts with existing tramper use activity, by monitoring hut book comments and recording these and any other comments to the Department.**

6.3.7 Waste Disposal

Policies

6.3.7(a)

To seek the minimisation of refuse and its disposal at suitable sites outside the Park boundaries.

6.3.7(b)

To provide and maintain toilet facilities at all huts and other appropriate sites, as necessary.

6.3.7(c)

To seek zero sewage effluent discharge directly or indirectly to waterways in the Park.

6.3.7(d)

Concessionaire guided groups regularly using camp sites distant from toilet facilities should be required to pack out toilet wastes for disposal at the nearest toilet facility or at an appropriate facility outside the Park.

Explanation

6.3.7(a) - Bylaw 4 of the Arthur's Pass National Park Bylaws 1981 makes it an offence to dispose of refuse in the Park. All refuse should be removed from the Park and recycled or disposed of in approved facilities. Where a structure or facility is being constructed or dismantled, all waste materials should be removed from the Park.

The "pack in-pack out" ideal will be strongly promoted throughout the Park. It is seen as a major priority for people to be aware that they must accept responsibility for their own waste, particularly in the remoter parts of the Park. Nevertheless the present system of providing suitable facilities in appropriate locations will continue.

The Westland and Selwyn District Councils, West Coast Regional Council and Environment Canterbury are the authorities managing waste disposal sites outside the Park. They are also the consent authorities for any discharges of waste within the Park. It will be necessary to liaise closely with these authorities to ensure that any adverse effects of the disposal of waste on the Park are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Selwyn and Westland District Councils are working towards a zero-waste policy for the District. The Department will need to plan for this eventuality. The tourist industry is developing several environmental standards that include waste issues. Both Councils have provided campervan sewage disposal points away from the Park and one is planned as part of the upgraded Arthur's Pass village public toilets complex.

6.3.7(b) - Toilet facilities of an appropriate standard will be provided in accordance with the Department's visitor assets management programme or otherwise as required through demand, particularly where there is overnight accommodation. Currently the Department is seeking and implementing cost-effective ways of containing and removing toilet waste from some hut and shelter toilets.

6.3.7(c) – Water in the Park is of a very high quality with little or no risk for human consumption, except where adverse natural processes have an effect (e.g. stagnant small tarns, flood silting, geothermal chemical discharges). It is desirable to keep this high quality state. See also 7.2.8 Catchment Management.

The Waimakariri River Regional Plan (2004) sets the water quality standard for the Upper Waimakariri catchment as “water being managed in its natural state”, but only after “reasonable mixing”. Policy 6.3.7(c) seeks the higher standard of zero discharges to waterways.

6.3.7(d) – Some concessionaires have favourite camp sites and have suggested they be permitted to locate toilets at these sites. Because of the remote setting of these sites however, such toilets have not been approved. If regular camping use is approved for any remote site it is appropriate to require the transfer of toilet wastes to a suitable disposal facility (see 6.4.7 Guiding and Mountaineering- and Bush-craft Instruction).

Methods

6.3.7(a)

- 1. The Department will continue to promote the “pack-it-in, pack-it-out” policy that encourages visitors to carry out their own refuse.**
- 2. Liaise with the Westland and Selwyn District Councils and concessionaires to ensure waste (including waste from campervans) is minimised and disposed of where it can be dealt with effectively, economically and with regard to the preservation of the environment.**

6.3.7(b) & (c)

- 1. Ensure appropriate toilet discharge and/or waste containment standards are met, by obtaining discharge consents or regional plan approval as needed, from the appropriate regional council and/or by good design of waste containers. See also 7.2.8 Catchment Management.**
- 2. Encourage public groups camping within the Park away from toilet facilities to bury toilet wastes at a shallow level in organic soils away from waterways (see Meyer, 1989). If the group is a large one, they should consider collection of their toilet wastes and disposal of them in an appropriate way. Groups toileting above organic-soil altitudes should be encouraged to pack-out their wastes for suitable disposal.**
- 3. Maintain liaison with Environment Canterbury and West Coast Regional Council with regard to the monitoring of water quality within, and any consents to discharge to, the Park’s waterways and in particular Upper Twin Creek and Bealey River as waterways potentially affected by Temple Basin and Arthur’s Pass village sewage effluent discharges.**

6.3.7(d)

Ensure consideration of the satisfactory collection and disposal of toilet wastes when processing applications for guiding concessions.

6.3.8 Public Use Outcomes

The Park is seen as providing:

1. "...in full measure the inspiration, enjoyment, recreation, and other benefits that may be derived from mountains, forests, ...lakes, rivers, and other natural features" as in the National Parks Act;
2. a varied landscape offering opportunities from short easy walks to technically difficult mountaineering, with many different route variations using valleys, ridges and peaks;
3. a small number of tracks and routes that are safe in all but extreme weather and river conditions;
4. an established network of huts, with hut sizes related to the recreational opportunity settings as embodied in this Plan;
5. a scenic backdrop for State Highway 73 and Midland railway travellers;
6. opportunities to experience the ecological and scenic variation along a spectrum from Canterbury to the West Coast, of tussock-lands, beech forest, sub-alpine vegetation, alpine bare scree, rocks and ice, rata forest and podocarp rainforest;
7. a Park where the majority of its area is managed for remote purposes;
8. a Park that away from SH 73, is very largely free of mechanical transport and aircraft noise;
9. drinkable water in all waterways, except where natural events (e.g. suspended sediment, algae and geothermal discharges) would encourage caution;
10. recognition in visitor information of the significance of the Hurunui Valley - Harper Pass - Taramakau Valley route for both Māori and early European exploration and travel; and
11. an understanding of and respect for the values of the Park by the public, including its natural hazards.

Within the Park, the remote zone offers:

12. areas with few facilities thus requiring the public to be self-sufficient and so gain the satisfaction and benefits of self-sufficiency, although smaller huts and bivvies are still located in some areas;
13. wide scope for route variations and trip variety, requiring good bush and mountain-craft skills, such as route-finding, map-reading and river-crossing;
14. a range of mountaineering opportunities, dependent on seasonal conditions and the ridge or face routes taken;
15. at current levels of public use, the opportunity to undertake trips that minimise interactions with other people, especially away from huts/bivvies;
16. the opportunity to take less-experienced people into more challenging environments, thus increasing their mountain-craft skills; and

17. a high degree of natural quiet, free from motor vehicle and aircraft noise other than authorised for vehicles essential for Park management and from high-flying domestic and trans-Tasman aircraft.

18. an area east of the Poulter River, including the Thompson Stream catchment, offering experiences for the fully self-reliant seeking minimal people interaction.

As narrow corridors through the remote zone, the backcountry walk-in zones offer:

19 easy tramping along well-defined tracks and obvious river-bed routes;

20. 'room to move' with larger party sizes;

21. larger huts, accommodating up to 20 or 24 persons;

22. some tracks/routes safe from river crossings, with good hut back-up should the weather and rivers not make travel sensible, or for emergencies, with larger huts having emergency radios;

23. a variety of track/route options 'east' and 'west' of the Divide;

24. the opportunity to take people relatively inexperienced in mountain-craft for a safe, but still challenging introduction to the mountains, for a variety of reasons including education and training, personal and group skill development, or simply for the enjoyment of the outdoors;

25. the opportunity to mountain bike within the Poulter Valley;

26. the experience of 'the dawn chorus' and of observing and/or hearing threatened and other species in the wild; and

27. a high degree of natural quiet, free from motor vehicle and aircraft noise other than for the authorised purposes and from high-flying domestic and trans-Tasman aircraft.

Following the SH 73 and Midland Railway routes, the backcountry accessible zone provides:

28. a distinctive and superb scenic corridor for travellers to Arthur's Pass, Otira and other localities along the route of the Main Divide crossing;

29. an appreciation, within the Otira Valley during the rata flowering season, of what we retain in New Zealand when we maintain introduced animal control;

30. easy access to the start and finish of trips into the wider Park environment;

31. a concentration of opportunities to visit and learn about historic routes and sites;

32. roadside visitor services within the National Park (picnic shelters, Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre, toilets, viewing places) and close proximity to more-developed visitor services on land adjoining the Park (visitor accommodation, restaurants and cafes);

- 33. short walks from the SH and Arthur's Pass village to scenic and historic highlights;**
- 34. a chance to experience some of the natural features of the wider Park environment, close encounters with the bush, waterways and sometimes rain, albeit along well-built, all-weather tracks and walks; and**
- 35. short ventures and adventures for small children and the less-abled; a place to go with larger visitor groups, or to choose times and days where your experience can still be more personal.**

6.4 CONCESSIONS AND OTHER USES

All human activities within the Park, that are not covered by the general public right of entry under section 4 of the National Parks Act 1980, require some form of permission from the Minister. These 'permissions' are generally called concessions. The Minister's approval role may be delegated to various management levels within the Department, depending on the nature and scale of the activity and the provisions of this Plan.

6.4.1 Concessions and Other Uses Objectives

- 1. The acknowledging of the Ngāi Tahu history of mahinga kai within the Park and the finding of ways for this mahinga kai to continue through customary use in harmony with national park values.**
- 2. The setting of high standards for Park preservation when allowing essential regional facilities to pass through or locate within the Park and for the use of stone and gravel from within the Park.**
- 3. The activities that concessionaires offer enhance their clients understanding and experience of national park values.**
- 4. The expansion of knowledge gained through research in and of the Park and its natural, cultural, historic and public use values.**
- 5. The maintenance of a high degree of natural quiet and natural darkness within the Park and especially of a minimal amount of aircraft noise.**
- 6. The avoidance of activities that do not need to occur within the Park and that are not directly related to national park values.**

Index to Concessions and Other Uses policy and outcomes sections:

6.4.2	Ngāi Tahu Customary Use	123
6.4.3	Concessions General	124
6.4.4	Research and Information Needs	127
6.4.5	Sporting Events	130
6.4.6	Existing Club and School Lodges	134
6.4.7	Guiding and Mountain- and Bush-craft Instruction	136
6.4.8	Aircraft	138
6.4.9	Commercial Filming and Photography	141
6.4.10	Stone and Gravel Removal	143
6.4.11	Military Manoeuvres, Exercises and Training	146
6.4.12	Survey Installations	147
6.4.13	Telecommunications	148
6.4.14	Concessions and Other Uses Outcomes	150

6.4.2 Ngāi Tahu Customary Use

Policies

6.4.2(a)

To consider applications for the customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species in accordance with the *General Policy for National Parks*, and where consistent with the other provisions of this Plan.

6.4.2(b)

To preserve and enhance the tuna (eel) population within the Park, while allowing consideration of any non-commercial customary use fishing applications on a case by case basis.

6.4.2(c)

To work with papatipu Rūnanga of the Park and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu to give effect to the Department's Protocol with Ngāi Tahu for cultural materials¹.

Methods

6.4.2(a), (b) & (c)

Use the publication *Allocation of cultural materials guidelines for the takiwa of the Ngāi Tahu wbānui* (2007) to assist with decision-making on applications for the collection, use and allocation of cultural materials from the Park.

6.4.2(a)

1. Require applications for customary use of traditional materials and indigenous species to have the support of papatipu Rūnanga.

6.4.2(b)

1. Encourage any research of tuna (eel) populations within the Park to be undertaken in consultation with papatipu Rūnanga.

2. Work with papatipu Rūnanga over any freshwater fishing harvest and management issues within the Park.

¹ See Appendix B(4) of this Plan

6.4.3 Concessions General

Several concessionaires operate in the Park. Their role is acknowledged throughout the Plan. This section focuses on the process of considering applications for concessions in general. Other sections of the Plan are also relevant to the processing of concession applications, depending on the proposed concession activity.

Policies

6.4.3(a)

To consider all applications for concessions and manage concessions in accordance with the relevant legislation, statutory planning instruments and the objectives and policies of this Plan.

6.4.3(b)

To grant concessions (including variations to existing concessions) in such a way that their adverse effects can be understood and monitored in the context of other general independent use of the Park.

6.4.3(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu when managing concessions and have particular regard to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for historic resources.

Explanation

6.4.3(a) & (b) - Concessions are required for activities in the Park that are generally of a commercial nature, in accordance with section 170 Conservation Act 1987 and section 49 National Parks Act 1980. It is important to consider all concession applications on their merits based on their beneficial and adverse effects, the relevant statutory framework, including planning instruments and this management plan. The information that must be included in a concession application is set out in section 17S of the Conservation Act. Applicants must identify and provide information about the possible effects of their proposed activities.

Consultation with Ngāi Tahu on each concession application may be undertaken by the Department as part of the Department's obligations arising from section 4 of the Conservation Act. See also Explanation 6.4.3(b). Consultation may also be undertaken with the relevant Conservation Board.

Appropriate conditions will be imposed on concessions and enforced to avoid, remedy or mitigate, as appropriate, any adverse effects of the activity, structure or facility on the Park or the public. The Department needs to be fully aware of the adverse effects of concessions, particularly cumulative effects, if it is to manage them effectively. For this reason all concessions granted should include monitoring provisions.

6.4.3(c) - The Historic Resources Protocol (see Appendix B) applies here. The Director-General is required when issuing concessions, to request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga before using the cultural information

of Ngāi Tahu. This requirement should be integrated with the monitoring mentioned above.

Methods

6.4.3(a) & (b)

1. Require information from applicants and seek information as necessary from others, to enable the Department to adequately assess the beneficial and adverse effects of concession proposals.

2. Applications will also be considered having regard to, but not being limited to, the following provisions²:

i. the purposes and other provisions of the National Parks Act 1980 and other relevant legislation;

ii. the General Policy for National Parks (2005);

iii. this management plan;

iv. the nature of the activity;

v. the functional need for and the type of any structure, or facility or activity proposed;

vi. the effects of the proposed activity, structure or facility, including a consideration of the cumulative effects;

vii. the availability of alternative locations (including outside the Park);

viii. the ability of the applicant to carry out the activity, including any industry qualifications/standards that may exist;

ix. measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate potential adverse effects on the Park's natural, historic and cultural values including, but not limited to:

a) the principles and purposes on which national parks were founded;

b) archaeological and historic sites;

c) landscape, landforms and geological features;

d) natural quiet and natural darkness;

e) indigenous plants and animals and ecosystems;

x. the potential for the introduction or spread of introduced animals or plants;

xi. the outcome of consultation with Ngāi Tahu interests as a result of section 4 Conservation Act obligations and measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate potential adverse effects on Ngāi Tahu values, where these measures do not conflict with the National Parks Act (see also Method 6.4.3(b));

xii. the ability of the applicant to provide accurate interpretation of national park values;

² It is the applicant's responsibility to provide all relevant information in an application by reference to Part IIIB Conservation Act 1987.

- xiii. any environmental impacts assessment (EIA);
 - xiv. any relevant submission(s) made by the public;
 - xv. measures to avoid adverse effects on recreational values, including but not limited to:
 - a) consistency with Figure 4 and Table 5 in 6.3.2 Public Access and Use;
 - b) hut use and capacity. General provisions are included under the recreational opportunity spectrum criteria in section 6.3.2 Public Access and Use. Where a concession application proposes to use a facility administered by the Canterbury Mountaineering Club, the organisation will be notified of the concession proposal and provided with sufficient time to comment;
 - c) walks, tracks and routes, including the immediately adjacent areas;
 - d) public access;
 - e) noise levels;
 - f) public use and enjoyment of the area concerned;
 - g) a facility maintenance levy;
 - xvi. the effects (physical, social, cultural and other) on the public in the Park when a concession activity is occurring;
 - xvii. any proposed means of advertising the concession activity within the Park.
 - xviii. the effects on both visitor and other public expectations for the preservation of national Park values, that derive from the history of national park establishment.
3. Except as authorised by the Minister, off-site³ advertising by any medium within the Park should only be allowed where it is in accordance with a concession.
4. Concessions will be monitored, in addition to other Park user monitoring, throughout the term of this Plan to determine compliance with concession provisions and establish and/or maintain baseline data on public use and its effects on natural, historic and cultural resources and recreation opportunities.

6.4.3(c)

1. Consult with tāngata whenua and where required or appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values in relation to managing concessions. For all *Deed of Settlement* matters both tāngata whenua and Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu must be consulted. “Consult” includes all of the relevant actions required of the Department under the provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act as mentioned in Policy 6.4.3(c).

³ ‘Off-site’ includes any area of the Park not included within a concessionaire’s lease, licence or permit area.

2. When the Director-General issues concessions request that the concessionaire consult with the relevant papatipu rūnanga before using or promoting Ngāi Tahu cultural information.

6.4.4 Research and Information Needs

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Research undertaken by the Department for Park management purposes does not require a concession.

Policies

6.4.4(a)

To encourage and undertake research in accordance with relevant legislation and the *General Policy for National Parks*, for the benefit of Park management and/or conservation knowledge in general about the Park, especially for threatened species, provided that such research does not detract from the protection of the Park's natural, historical and cultural values and public enjoyment.

6.4.4(b)

To undertake and encourage monitoring within the Park of the state of and changes to natural and historic features and of public use impacts and perceptions.

6.4.4(c)

To acknowledge the cultural, spiritual, historic and traditional association of Ngāi Tahu with taonga species and cultural materials and have particular regard to the Department's Protocols with Ngāi Tahu for cultural materials.

Explanation

6.4.4(a) - The very aspect of good access to parts of the Park makes it particularly suitable for many types of research - soils, animal and plant processes and interactions.

Research can fill gaps in knowledge of the Park's natural resources, the natural processes at work in the Park, public usage and the interactions between the Park and Park users etc. Where this research has minimal adverse effects on the environment of the Park, its indigenous species, and on public use in the Park it may be carried out in accordance with the other policies and objectives of this Plan and any conditions that may be imposed. This can assist decision making for protection management and development of the Park, for public safety, and for interpretation of the features of the Park to the public.

The Park is of particular scientific significance because it is the type locality for which many plant and animal species are described and to which all other specimens are referable. The Park also has fossil resources of considerable interest. These values attract attention from field naturalists. In some localities within the Park some species are particularly sensitive and additional precautions must be taken to ensure they are protected from adverse effects.

Whereas researchers have the free right of access of the general public, prior approval is required to collect samples, erect structures and use aircraft for access (see 6.4.8 Aircraft). The taking of samples for scientific research or educational purposes could have adverse effects on Park values. Applications for the collection of material are best assessed through the concession process, in accordance with Policies 11(d), 11(e) and 11(f) of the *General Policy for National Parks*, as this allows for an assessment to be made of possible adverse effects. It also allows conditions to be placed on the activity to avoid, remedy or mitigate any potential adverse effects including the loss of or disturbance to species or other natural features or the possibility that a species population may diminish over time.

Research proposals involving visitor questionnaires or interviews, need careful consideration to ensure that the research does not adversely affect public experiences within the Park.

6.4.4(b) - Monitoring programmes will be continued and/or developed for the Park's natural and historic values, in accordance with the provisions set out in 6.2 of this Plan. Monitoring will also occur to provide public use information, to determine if public use management is satisfactory, and in conjunction with concessionaires to determine if concession conditions are being adhered to.

Current or proposed monitoring includes that for:

- forest health surveys with respect to possum control in the Otira/Deception (dating back to 1980s) in poison treatment and non-treatment areas;
- deer exclosures in the Deception;
- pest plants;
- goat eradication in Otira/Deception;
- boundary fence maintenance in Otira/Deception;
- roroa/great spotted kiwi population trends in Taramakau valley (primarily true-right, just outside the Park);
- roroa/great spotted kiwi in the Bealey valley by the Arthur's Pass community;
- the kākārīki karaka/orange-fronted parakeet programme (see 6.2.2.1);
- pig and goat control in Waimakariri/Poulter;
- concessionaire activity, particularly for the Coast to Coast and Avalanche Peak Challenge;
- public facilities use and facilities condition;
- public use numbers at specific sites as part of a national programme across a range of recreational opportunity areas;

- public use patterns and satisfaction within the Mingha and Deception valleys, and use of facilities and regular campsites;
- public perceptions, expectations and satisfaction;
- Poulter valley mountain bike use;
- climate change effects on indigenous plants and animals, and forest biomass and animal pest interactions; and
- snow and ice responses to climate change, particularly as it affects recreational opportunities and Temple Basin ski field.

6.4.4(c) - Taonga species are identified in Appendix C and the relevant provisions of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 are outlined in 6.2.2 Indigenous Plants and Animals. Any research or monitoring involving taonga species should refer to section 6.2.2.

The Department's Protocol with Ngāi Tahu for managing plant and animal cultural materials includes a provision requiring consultation in respect of any competing request for cultural materials, such as for research (see Appendix B, clause 4.3(d)).

Methods

6.4.4(a)

- 1. Require the seeking of concessions and process applications received for research, including for any collection of species or materials, in accordance with Policies 11(a) to 11(g) of the *General Policy for National Parks*.**
- 2. Maintain the herbarium at the Park Visitor Centre and a current list of sensitive areas and rare species.**

6.4.4(c)

- 1. If a taonga species is sought Policy 6.2.2(e) shall apply.**
- 2. Consult with tāngata whenua and where required or appropriate Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, from the early stages of proposed undertakings that will affect Ngāi Tahu values.**

6.4.5 Sporting Events

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

6.4.5(a)

Organised sporting and other competitive events additional to the existing Coast to Coast and the Avalanche Peak Challenge events, should not be allowed unless they will:

- i. be consistent with the preservation as far as possible of the Park in its natural state;**
- ii. avoid adverse effects, including cumulative effects, on other Park values;**
- iii. not have any adverse effects on the existing recreational opportunities in the area;**
- iv. avoid adverse effects on Park tracks and routes; and**
- v. minimise adverse effects on other Park users.**

6.4.5(b)

Applications to hold sporting events (whether commercial or not) will be considered, taking account of the following:

- i. the requirements of 6.4.3 Concessions General, if applicable;**
- ii. Conservation Board comment (obtained “in committee” for policy 6.4.5(d) events);**
- iii. whether the event has a history of use and the past performance of the organisers and participants;**
- iv. the type of activity, including pre-event training, and its likely impact particularly on the Park’s natural values including soil and scree slope stability;**
- v. likely numbers of participants and spectators at present and in the future;**
- vi. conditions to be imposed by the organisers;**
- vii. if the same or a similar recreational opportunity can readily be provided outside the Park;**
- viii. the extent to which any recreational opportunity would be displaced or otherwise affected by the event and any training for the event;**
- ix. impacts on other visitors, including other organised sporting and competitive events;**
- x. the degree to which aircraft use may occur for event-related documentary or news filming, whether subject to 6.4.8 Aircraft or not (i.e. in the later case, non-“landing” aircraft);**
- xi. retaining the remote experience qualities of the Park;**

- xii. any educational benefits for national park principles arising from the activity; and
- xiii. the recreational benefits of the event.

6.4.5(c)

Conditions of approval for sporting events may include any or all of the following:

- i. conditions to protect the Park's natural features;
- ii conditions to avoid the introduction or spread of introduced animals or plants (e.g. didymo);
- iii. conditions and procedures for cancellation or postponement of the event;
- iv. conditions to protect the experience of other Park users;
- v. an approved safety plan;
- vi. control of numbers, either absolutely or in certain areas;
- vii. advance promotion being in harmony with the numbers of participants who can be catered for or who are permitted;
- viii. events being confined to pre-agreed routes, generally existing track systems (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities), suitable riverbeds or hardened areas;
- ix. rehabilitation of damage;
- x. mitigation measures;
- xi. provision of temporary facilities, such as toilets, rubbish bins and water supply;
- xii. requirements for the accommodation of participants inside or outside the Park; and agreements on the extent of aircraft use, in particular noting Policy 6.4.8(b).

6.4.5(d)

Sporting events with no public disclosure of the route prior to the event should be:

- i. approved only where there is substantial compliance with policy 6.3.2(b) and its associated Figure 4 and Table 5;
- ii. subject to the same conditions as other Park users; and
- iii. be restricted to the use of existing means of access.

Explanation

6.4.5(a), (b) & (c) - This section is intended to cover organised sporting events, which:

- are advertised as being open to the general public, as distinct from closed club events or activities of individuals or small groups of Park users; or
- involve large numbers of participants; or
- may attract large numbers of spectators; or
- potentially have significant adverse effects on Park values.

Events of this nature could include multi-sport and endurance races, orienteering and rogaine events. Park Bylaw 12 requires approval for any competitive sports event or any organised training for any such event in the Park. A concession is the approval required for a commercial event.

Currently two competitive events are held annually in the Park: the Deception-Mingha run as part of the Coast to Coast event and the Arthur's Pass village-Avalanche Peak-Crow valley run of the Avalanche Peak Challenge. These two events could now be said to be part of the recreational opportunity offered by the Park and future primary considerations for these events are likely to be focussed on their impacts on the Park's natural features. Monitoring to date has resulted in some incremental changes to the events' concessions. There is concern about the effects of the Avalanche Peak Challenge on the scree slope running down to the upper Crow valley, which is being bared of scree. These effects may include both natural value impacts and those on other recreational opportunities in the area.

The use of vehicles is not likely given the policies under 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles. The use of aircraft is likely to be very restricted given the policies under 6.4.8 Aircraft.

These types of events are most likely to exceed, often by a considerable extent, the guidelines set out in Table 5; if approved, they are exceptions to the guidelines. They do provide for a valid and increasingly popular recreational opportunity, but the need for them to be held in a national park does require careful scrutiny.

Such events may have benefits in educating participants about national park values provided the leaders/organisers have adequate knowledge, the means and ability to impart it, and the ability to limit numbers and control their charges. The provision of pre-race information may be the most effective means of informing participants of national park preservation principles, but on race-day itself it is likely that the participants' focus is on recreation, albeit within a national park, rather than on preservation values.

Current knowledge of the impacts of sporting events indicates that ground and adjacent vegetation damage appears to be low when confined to existing well-maintained track systems or open bare-gravel/rock riverbeds in dry conditions and when not on steep slopes. These ideal conditions are seldom obtained along a whole event route on every occasion and avoidance and remedial measures may be required, potentially including event postponement or cancellation. The impact on wildlife is variable; some vulnerable species such as whoio/blue duck can be significantly disturbed, while for species such as invertebrates on scree slopes there may be significant disturbance of a small part of their Park habitat.

Impacts on other public use of the Park are variable. There is evidence of the displacement of existing public use to other areas within or out of the Park, particularly on event-day itself, but also as training activity builds up prior to an event. How significant this displacement is, given the range of alternative opportunities, is debatable.

To avoid or minimise damage to plants, animals and facilities (e.g. tracks), or interference with the public enjoyment of the Park, all organised public events must be subject to controls. Thorough monitoring of event impacts is essential.

Additional events at similar scales to the two above are unlikely to meet the standards required by the *General Policy* and this Plan.

6.4.5(d) - Similar events to the above, to date outside the Park, have involved routes that are not made public until the race day itself and this can pose difficulties in any public processing of a concession and in avoiding conflict with existing public use on the day of the event. Some of these events however, have party sizes, party interactions and access requirements that are little different (other than speed of travel) from existing public use and in these situations it may still be appropriate to approve the events.

Method

6.4.5(c) - **To review by April 2009 the concession for the Avalanche Peak Challenge so as to require an assessment of any impacts of the event on the natural values of the Crow valley scree slope (specifically its geological and ecological values) and on recreational opportunities in the valley where changes to the scree slope may impact on ease of access to and from the valley.**

6.4.6 Existing Club and School Lodges

Policy

6.4.6

The retention within the Park of the existing club and school lodges may be allowed by means of concessions or authorisations, where they exist as an accommodation base for public activities in accordance with this Plan and the building receives a significant level of appropriate use for those activities.

Explanation

6.4.6 - There are four lodges in the Park. These are:

- Kidson Lodge (Christchurch Boys' High School) at the Hawdon - 36 bunks;
- Patterson Lodge (St Margaret's College) at the Hawdon - 20 bunks;
- Temple Basin Ski Club at Temple Basin - 59 bunks;
- University Ski Club at Temple Basin - 45 bunks.

These lodges hold a privileged position in the Park in that they may at times be used exclusively by the school or by club members. This is in contrast to club-owned mountain huts, which are available to the public, as well as to club members (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities).

Schools and clubs that have lodges in the Park are expected to make full use of their facilities as a base for the activities for which the lodge exists, which are public use activities in accordance with this Plan. If they fail to do so, or if substantial use is occurring for non-school or non-club activities, then the reasons for the presence of the lodge in the Park, especially separate from the extensive accommodation facilities adjoining the Park, on pastoral runs, in Arthur's Pass village and elsewhere, are brought into question.

As was common in national parks and conservation areas, the lodges were issued with permits on the discretion of the Minister. Nationally this situation is changing and concessions or authorisations are being required under section 50 National Parks Act for national parks. This action is primarily to ensure that the lodges and their activities are managed consistently with other structures and activities within the parks and areas and with the legislation and *General Policy*. The ski lodges have a 30-year concession issued March 2006 (see 7.2.12 Temple Basin Ski Field).

Clubs are obliged to abide by the requirements of the Selwyn District Council regarding building permits, licensing as residential institutions and fire safety measures. Currently (2005) Patterson Lodge may not meet the requirements for overnight accommodation.

Policy 9(e) of the *General Policy* sets criteria that should be met for all accommodation and related facilities. It is not certain that the current Hawdon lodges would meet all these criteria. Near the Hawdon lodges in particular there are adverse environmental impacts through vehicle use and previous firewood collection, although these are now exacerbated by damage from straying cattle and non-lodge related vehicle use, perhaps attracted by the

lodges. The lodges are near the Park boundary and the land adjoining is Reserve for National Park Purposes - see 6.2.9 Boundaries and Park Additions.

To maintain standards for the lodges, minor additions or alterations may be permitted that improve the service offered to users, but which do not increase the amount of accommodation. Any alterations, additions or replacements will have to be in accordance with a concession or authorisation and any local body requirements.

Methods

6.4.6

- 1. Advise the schools of the need for authorisations for their lodges, process their authorisation applications with attention to appropriate use and improved environmental care standards (see Policy 9(e), *General Policy*), including ways of minimising vehicle use in the area. Once new authorisations are approved the existing permits will be cancelled.**
- 2. Seek the removal, or seek an alternative use or user, of any lodge that is no longer being used as an accommodation base for public activities in accordance with this Plan.**
- 3. Seek improvements to the general surroundings of the Hawdon lodges area through better control of straying cattle (see 6.2.9 Boundaries and Park Additions) and better vehicle control (see 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles).**
- 4. Administer the ski lodge concessions as part of the Temple Basin ski field lease – see 7.2.12 Temple Basin Ski Field.**

6.4.7 Guiding and Mountain and Bush-craft instruction

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

6.4.7(a)

To consider guiding, mountain and bush-craft instruction concession applications within the Park, subject to:

- i. the provisions of 6.4.3 Concessions General;**
- ii. the proposed operation's consistency with the visitor management setting(s) (Figure 4) within which the activity is to be undertaken;**
- iii. recognising the tradition of mountain- and bush-craft instruction courses within the Park;**
- iv. the provision of a concessionaire safety plan; and**
- v. the applicant's demonstrated ability to provide accurate interpretation of the Park's values.**

6.4.7(b)

Relaxation of the party size criteria in Table 5 may be allowed for mountain and bush-craft instruction courses, but not the hut occupancy criteria.

Explanation

6.4.7(a) & (b) - Guiding as covered by this policy takes a number of forms. In the more accessible parts of the Park it can include guided bus tours on short walks, while in the remote areas it can include multi-sport event training, tramping, climbing ascents or hunting.

Many concessions have been granted for the provision of guiding services in the Park. Most are for brief occasional visits as part of New Zealand-wide services, while a few are more concentrated in the Park for nature appreciation, multi-sport training and tramping.

Mountain and bush-craft instruction courses historically involved volunteers from mountaineering and tramping clubs and from mountain safety organisations, but more recently has involved professional instructors working for clubs and others. This advent of professional instructor involvement has clarified a need for concessions. The Park is ideal for basic mountain-craft and bush-craft instruction.

When assessing concession applications, consideration should be given to the visitor management setting(s) within which the activity is to occur. It is important that concession activities are generally consistent with and do not dominate these setting(s). There is however, a long tradition of mountain- and bush-craft instruction courses within the Park and usually these involve party sizes in excess of the Table 5 criteria. Given the highly beneficial nature of these courses and that the ongoing public users of the Park tend to be the course clients, a relaxation of the Table 5 criteria is appropriate.

Professional guides and instructors can provide for greater public use and enjoyment of the Park than might otherwise be obtained. They provide the skills and experience necessary to take clients through the Park's terrain. In addition, clients hopefully gain an appreciation of the Park's natural, historic and cultural values and often learn the necessary skills to undertake activities by themselves. Appropriate qualifications for guides and instructors are essential and industry qualifications/standards are mostly in place. Where an industry standard has been set, the Department will support this. For all guiding/instructing concessions the Department requires a concessionaire safety plan, audited by an independent auditor. This requirement helps ensure that the public are purchasing a professional service when within the Park.

The Department will always seek the provision of accurate interpretation of the Park's values from guiding and instructing concessionaires. In addition Ngāi Tahu will also request this in respect of Ngāi Tahu cultural information (see Policy and Method 6.4.3(b)).

The consideration of any facilities within the Park for the exclusive use of guides or instructor concessionaires is covered within 6.3.3 Public Facilities.

6.4.8 Aircraft

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

6.4.8(a)

To allow aircraft to land anywhere in the Park where that is essential for Park management purposes, while making best endeavours to avoid or mitigate any adverse effects on the public in the Park.

6.4.8(b)

To provide for the quiet enjoyment of the Park, aircraft use in the Park should be avoided, but where approved should:

- i. avoid weekends and public holidays, except in accordance with Policy 6.4.8(c)(ii) and (iii)(e);**
- ii. specify the use of quieter aircraft and the use of quieter flying techniques; and**
- iii. specify flight paths that minimise public disturbance.**

6.4.8(c)

Except as provided by 6.4.8(a), to require aircraft taking off or landing within the Park to have a concession. Aircraft use within the Park, in accordance with 6.4.8(b), should not be approved for other than the following circumstances:

- i. wild animal control;**
- ii. (a) locating and retrieving for the Coast to Coast event, temporary ground repeaters at three sites (Kellys Hill; south-east ridge of Mt Blimit; Mt Williams) over a three-day period per annum;**
 - (b) positioning personnel for documentary and news media filming for the Coast to Coast event, at Doreen Creek, Goat Pass and Dudleys Knob; and**
 - (c) public safety and logistical support where essential for existing concession approved sporting events, being the Coast to Coast and Avalanche Peak Challenge;**
- iii. the following exceptional circumstances:**
 - (a) access to approved research sites where foot access is not a realistic alternative;**
 - (b) annual recording of live salmon numbers within the Poulter valley-floor and lower side-streams, up-valley to and including the lower Thompson Stream, by a maximum of five flights, with brief landings, during April to June each year;**
 - (c) the servicing of approved utility activities where vehicle access is not an available alternative or would have a greater adverse effect;**

- (d) documentary filming related to national park natural values, at sites approved through a concession;
- (e) national news media filming at short notice for news-breaking stories, by contacting the Area Manager and receiving a permit for specified sites;
- (f) essential Temple Basin ski field construction and maintenance; and
- (g) other circumstances of a similar exceptional nature to the above.

6.4.8(d)

Aircraft use within the Park should not be approved for scenic flights, heli-skiing, heli-hiking or positioning recreationists.

Explanation

General

Note 6.4.12 Survey Installations, regarding the permitted use of aircraft for cadastral survey purposes in accordance with section 53 of the Cadastral Survey Act 2002.

The term 'aircraft' in this policy section refers to fixed-wing and rotary-wing aircraft, microlights, balloons and gliders, as defined in the Civil Aviation Act 1990.

The operational control of aircraft in the airspace over the Park is the responsibility of the Civil Aviation Authority (CAA). In general, the CAA Rules state that aircraft shall not operate at less than 500 feet above any ground within a radius of 500 feet around the aircraft, unless they are landing, taking off or forced lower due to adverse weather. Over the Arthur's Pass and Otira villages the relevant height and radius is 1000 feet and 2000 feet respectively.

Harper Pass and Arthur's Pass are recognised as standard transalpine air routes in certain weather conditions. The Ministry of Defence's permanent low-flying training flight path passes over the eastern edge of the Park. These aircraft activities tend to be of minor impact or be very infrequent.

Non-commercial hang-gliders, parapents and parachutes, providing no motorised power packs are used, do not require approvals in terms of the National Parks Act 1980 and the need for control of these operations is not considered to be necessary at this time. The use of a motorised power pack qualifies as an aircraft and Policies 6.4.8(a) to (d) apply. Attention is drawn to the 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles policy that restricts vehicles to roads, parking areas and camping areas. Fliers of hang-gliders and parapents and parachutists will be expected to take appropriate safety precautions (see 6.3.2 Public Access and Use).

6.4.8(a) - Park management includes those works/activities necessary for the effective management of the Park. The use of aircraft is necessary to enable the efficient servicing of the Park (e.g. hut maintenance) and search and rescue and fire control operations. Aircraft undertaking authorised Park management are permitted to land or hover anywhere in or over the Park, but should make best endeavours to minimise any adverse effects of aircraft activity on the public. This may involve avoiding aircraft activity during peak recreational use times, using quieter aircraft and/or notifying the public of aircraft activity, where feasible.

6.4.8(b), (c) & (d) - Minimal aircraft activity across the whole Park is a distinctive feature of Arthur's Pass National Park compared with other national parks and is highly regarded by Park users. There is no traditional usage of the Park by aircraft for scenic flights, heli-skiing or positioning recreationists such as climbers and hunters. The Park is easily reached by road and rail, is reasonably accessible by foot, and opportunities exist outside the Park for aircraft use in an alpine environment. A continuation of a restrictive policy is appropriate to retain the Park as an alpine area very largely free from aircraft operations not directly concerned with Park management or essential needs associated with utility and other services.

Section 17ZF(5) of the Conservation Act 1987 defines landing of an aircraft, for the purposes of that section, in the following terms:

"...‘landing’ includes the hovering of any aircraft and the setting down or taking on of goods or persons from an aircraft."

The Act requires that all aircraft landing in the Park, other than those permitted under Policy 6.4.8(a), shall be authorised through a concession (see 6.4.3 Concessions General). It enables the Minister to place the necessary conditions on aircraft operators landing in the Park in order to minimise adverse effects on the natural values of the Park and on the public within the Park. Even where aircraft use is unavoidable, the impact of the activity on public use in the Park can be minimised by avoiding peak public-use times and by specifying the use of quieter types of aircraft.

The Wild Animal Control Act 1977, as amended 1997, provides for the granting of concessions to authorise wild animal recovery operations. It is acknowledged that the extermination of introduced animals, as far as possible, within the Park is consistent with section 4(2)(b) of the National Parks Act 1980, but conditions may be placed on these concessions to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on other Park users.

6.4.9 Commercial Filming and Photography

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

6.4.9(a)

Commercial filming and photography within the Park should:

- i. be consistent with the recreational opportunity settings in Figure 4 and the criteria in Table 5;**
- ii. be subject to the same conditions as other users;**
- iii. be restricted to the means of access specified in this Plan; and**
- iv. have regard to any effects both beneficial and adverse and whether any adverse effects can be adequately avoided, remedied or mitigated, in each case having regard to the purposes of the National Parks Act.**

6.4.9(b)

Any proposal for commercial filming or photography that is not consistent with criteria i, ii or iii of policy 6.4.9(a), and is being considered as an exception to that policy, should be considered only if it is publicly notified or where adequate public consultation has been clearly demonstrated.

Explanation

6.4.9(a) & (b) - The activity of filming and photography in the Park generally involves just a few people for a few hours with equipment carried by hand. There is however the possibility of approval being sought for larger groups, although the level of activity experienced in some other national parks, such as for feature films, is less likely. As the scale increases, so does the amount of auxiliary equipment, vehicles, temporary buildings, desired aircraft use and the overall scale of effect. The cumulative number of activities also increases the scale of effect.

The policies are designed to preserve the Park's natural and other values (see 2 The Park, its Features and Heritage) and promote them where possible, which is a fundamental object of the National Parks Act, while recognising the right of the public to enjoy freedom of access to and enjoyment of these unique natural features, and to manage the increasing pressure, particularly from commercial interests to use these features for promotional or other activities.

In considering a concession application for commercial filming or photography, the other policies of this Plan also need to be considered where associated activities, such as aircraft and vehicle use, temporary structures and animal use, are desired. Aircraft use would require a separate concession (see 6.4.8 Aircraft) and under the policies of this Plan is a controlled and very limited activity.

Recreational opportunity settings (see 2.4.2) are a method used in this Plan to identify and provide for a range of visitor experiences and recreational opportunities within the Park, consistent with the purposes of section 4 National Parks Act and visitor expectations. Provisions for access to and within the Park are consistent with the visitor management settings.

The attention of applicants for filming concessions will be drawn to *A guideline for filming within the robe of Ngāi Tabu* (2002), and the *Code of Practice, Filming on Public Conservation Lands* (2005), developed by Film New Zealand and the Department for the benefit of screen production in New Zealand.

Where any of the above activities also involves State Highway 80 the approval of Transit New Zealand is required (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73).

The management of filming and photography is still an evolving matter in both New Zealand and overseas national parks. While concessions have been granted for filming in national parks, there has been little assessment of the resultant activities against the requirements of the national park legislation and General Policy. This is being addressed, but primarily in other national parks.

In accordance with its legislative functions, the Department will continue to promote and advocate for conservation and national park preservation principles, through methods such as industry liaison, consultation on guidelines, support for Park interpretation and documentary projects and encouraging artistic interpretation, such as through the Department's involvement with Creative New Zealand (see 6.3.4 Information and Interpretation).

6.4.10 Stone and Gravel Removal

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

6.4.10(a)

Applications to allow stone and gravel removal from within the Park, or movement within the Park, should not be approved except in the following situations:

- i. in accordance with policy 6.4.10(b);**
- ii. within the Bealey riverbed to protect Arthur's Pass village (note Method 7.2.8(a) 5);**
- iii. the residents of Arthur's Pass village may be permitted to remove small quantities of material from the Bealey riverbed for domestic use within the village, subject to:**
 - (a) no use of mechanical diggers or loaders;**
 - (b) taking the material from the riverbed immediately downstream of the Bealey River railway bridge (near Greyneys Shelter); and**
 - (c) the Area Manager's approval being obtained.**
- iv. for Park management purposes.**

6.4.10(b)

Applications for stone and gravel removal from within the Park, or movement within the Park, for the essential construction, protection and maintenance of State Highway 73 and the Midland Railway adjoining or within close proximity to the Park may be approved:

- i. for the following situations:**
 - (a) where it is preferable to use material sourced from the Park to maintain the geological integrity (rock type and colour) of the Park; or**
 - (b) where it is preferable to use material from locations free or largely free of introduced pest plants;**
- ii. from the following locations:**
 - (a) from active riverbed away from public use areas where practicable and where periodic flooding can erase the signs of removal; or**
 - (b) from active riverbeds adjoining State Highway and Railway bridges to avoid bridge damage or overtopping; or**
 - (c) within active riverbeds adjoining the State Highway and Railway for protection works.**

Explanation

6.4.10(a) & (b) - Exempt from the Crown Minerals Act 1991 restrictions is the removal from the Park of Crown owned minerals (which include stone and gravel) for use in the Park for any reasonable domestic, road making or building purpose (section 8(2) of Act). Also exempt from the Crown Minerals Act is the removal of any sand, shingle or other natural material from the bed of a river or a lake, these removals being covered by section 13 of the Resource Management Act and administered by Environment Canterbury.

Section 50(2) of the National Parks Act 1980 allows for the collection of stone, gravel or similar substances found in the Park, for use in the construction of buildings or facilities. The large volume and replenishing nature of material in riverbeds makes this possible with minimal environmental impact.

For stopbank work and for roads, tracks, buildings and other uses in the Park, it is important that local stone and gravel is used wherever possible, to retain the geological integrity of the Park and its associated environs (e.g. by avoiding incongruous stone colours).

Extensive river protection works and gravel stopbanks are present in the Park. These are necessary for the security of State Highway 73, the Midland Railway and Park access roads, as well as affording protection to parts of the Park and adjoining lands, including Arthur's Pass village. Some major works include those:

- protecting the railway track in the Waimakariri and Bealey valleys;
- protecting the State Highway causeway from the Waimakariri River / Bealey Bridge towards Klondyke Corner and extending upstream to opposite Turkey Flat;
- in the Bealey River between Klondyke Corner and Greyneys Flat to protect State Highway 73;
- in the Bealey River and Rough Creek to protect parts of Arthur's Pass village and transmission line poles (maintained by other than New Zealand Railways Corporation or Transit New Zealand);
- in the Otira Gorge to protect State Highway 73 and its Otira viaduct;
- at Kellys Creek to protect the State Highway bridge and Kellys Shelter/carpark/amenity area; and
- to divert the Hawdon River away from its true left bank adjoining the Hawdon Shelter.

The management of State Highway 73 and, to a lesser extent, the Midland Railway requires the removal of stone and gravel build-up in riverbeds within the Park upstream and downstream of highway and railway bridges. For both the geological integrity reason above and to avoid invasive weed introductions, it is better that this removed material is used for highway and railway construction and for maintenance, rather than bringing material into the Park environs from areas outside the Park.

Most railway maintenance material is brought into the area and the taking of stone for use in the Park is limited to landscape construction material.

In all the above situations, should section 50(2) of the National Parks Act not apply, then section 49 of the Act allows consideration of the activity.

Prospecting or exploring for, or mining of Crown owned minerals, is generally administered under the Crown Minerals Act 1991. Mining operators are required to gain a minerals permit from the Minister of Commerce, resource consent from the local authority and landowner consent by way of an “access arrangement”. A 1997 amendment to the Crown Minerals Act does however, effectively prohibit access arrangements within national parks, for all but very low impact activities.

Given its geology, the Park is unlikely to receive much attention for exploration or prospecting.

Methods

6.4.10(a)

- 1. Where approvals are being considered, by concession where needed, then potential adverse effects should be considered (see 6.4.3 Concessions General, where appropriate), particularly of vehicle access to the site (see 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles).**
- 2. Consent under the Resource Management Act 1991 will be obtained, or required to be obtained, where applicable.**

6.4.10(b)

- 1. Where concession approvals are being considered refer also to 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles, 6.4.3 Concessions General, 7.2.9 State Highway 73 and 7.2.10 Midland Railway.**
- 2. Consent under the Resource Management Act 1991 will be obtained, or required to be obtained, where applicable.**

6.4.11 Military Manoeuvres, Exercises and Training

Policy

6.4.11

To allow military use of the Park in accordance with the 1990 Defence Training Agreement.

Explanation

The Department and the New Zealand Defence Force are parties to a Defence Training Agreement signed 8 March 1990. The agreement provides for military training on state areas, as defined by the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977 and includes land administered by the Department subject to conditions to protect natural and historic resources and the experience of the public.

Military manoeuvres and exercises are generally considered to be incompatible with the natural values of the Park. Occasions may arise however, where it is important in the wider national interest that areas within the Park are available for training in particular skills.

The military has provided valuable assistance to Park management in the past - for example, with helicopter support for search and rescue exercises and hut maintenance. These exercises are clearly of benefit to the Park and Park users.

This Plan identifies values of importance to Ngāi Tahu and recommends when consultation should be undertaken.

In addition to considering effects on natural, historic or cultural values, it is important that particular regard is had to the experience characteristics of the recreational opportunity setting(s) in which the military exercise is to occur. For example, the remote experience setting is managed to provide for a remote experience opportunity. Group sizes of concessionaires are restricted to a maximum of eight people and the landing of aircraft should not be permitted. A military exercise involving considerable personnel would be inconsistent with this setting and would be likely to adversely impact on public use in that setting.

Methods

6.4.11

- 1. When assessing the appropriateness of a military exercise, have particular regard to any adverse effects on the Park's natural, historic and cultural values and to the consistency of the exercise with the recreational opportunity setting(s) in which it is to occur.**
- 2. If there is any doubt as to whether a proposed military exercise will impact on Ngāi Tahu values, consultation should be undertaken with tāngata whenua and where appropriate, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu.**
- 3. Where military exercises are likely to involve the use of Park huts administered by the Canterbury Mountaineering Club, the Club should be notified prior to the activity taking place.**

6.4.12 Survey Installations

Policies

6.4.12(a)

The retention of existing permanent survey beacons, which are considered to be essential by the Department and Land Information New Zealand, will be accepted.

6.4.12(b)

Liaison should be maintained with Land Information New Zealand in regard to the installation of survey marks, use of temporary survey beacons, cutting of sight lines, access to survey marks and reasonable notice of access requirements.

Explanation

6.4.12(a) & (b) - The high ground of the Park is an integral part of the cadastral and mapping survey system in the Canterbury and Westland Land Districts. Fixed points (known as survey marks or trigonometrical stations) provide a basis for present and future survey control.

These fixed points are usually marked by a permanent metal tube. Some are further identified by a survey beacon over the ground mark so that they may be seen and utilised. Such beacons, by their very nature, have to be visible. In forest or scrub areas this could require vegetation clearance along sight lines, with a consequent impact on vegetation and the landscape.

Both survey marks and beacons are authorised and protected by the Cadastral Survey Act 2002. The Act also allows for reasonable access, which for high ground usually means helicopter access, and the giving of reasonable notice of an intention to access the survey marks. For the Park it is desirable that such access is consistent where practicable with the provisions of this Plan.

Methods

6.4.12(a) & (b)

1. The five permanent survey beacons deemed by Land Information New Zealand to be essential and to be retained are on Mt Koeti, Kellys Hill, Warnocks Knob, trig K (above Arthur's Pass village) and Bealey Spur trig 6611.
2. Where vegetation clearance is required at survey beacons to maintain sight lines this should be kept to a minimum and should be carried out in consultation with the Department.
3. Where temporary beacons are required every effort should be encouraged to minimise the long-term effect of placing such beacons. If feasible, beacons should be erected to be visible above the vegetation canopy to avoid the need to cut vegetation.
4. Where aircraft access is required to a survey mark, request that the provisions of Policy 6.4.8(b) be followed.

6.4.13 Telecommunications

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

6.4.13(a)

Telecommunications facilities⁴ may be allowed within the Park where:

- i. they cannot reasonably be established in a location outside the Park or elsewhere in the Park where the potential adverse effects would be significantly less;**
- ii. they are co-sited with other facilities unless applicants can demonstrate that this is impractical;**
- iii. their provision, uses and the means of access to them are not inconsistent with the recreational uses and opportunities of the site;**
- iv. they have minimal impact on ecological values, scenery and natural features and on the qualities of solitude, remoteness, wilderness, peace and natural quiet, and**
- v. cultural values are taken into account and detrimental effects on wāhi tapu are avoided.**

6.4.13(b)

To seek review of the location and concession conditions for telecommunications facilities on Kellys Hill, with a view to:

- i. obtaining compliance with policy 6.4.13(a);**
- ii. requiring the facilities to be of a scale, design and colour that harmonises with the landscape and not have an adverse effect on the natural values of the Park;**
- iii. co-siting facilities as far as practicable, to reduce their adverse effects;**
- iv. removing any redundant parts of the facilities; and**
- v. when facilities are upgraded, requiring the use of equipment and technology that reduces visual and other environmental effects.**

Explanation

6.4.13(a) & (b) - At present communication facilities in the Park include television translator stations on Kellys Hill to service Otira, on Goldney Ridge to service Arthur's Pass and Telecom, and FM radio broadcast facilities on Greyneys Ridge.

A radio-telephone repeater station servicing Arthur's Pass village has been installed at a point overlooking the Mingha/Bealey junction. This has improved the communication link between the village and the rest of the country.

⁴ This policy applies to proposed new facilities and can be applied to existing facilities where their concession conditions or legislative provisions allow for this.

Communication facilities immediately adjoining the Park consist of VHF repeater stations on Kellys Hill and Mount Misery, and telephone poles, overhead lines and a cell-phone tower within Arthur's Pass village.

Policies 6.4.13(a) & (b) are a re-statement of policies 10.3(a), (b), (e), (f) & (g) of the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005), to emphasize the high standards needed for such facilities within national parks.

Most of the above facilities are discrete and of only minor impact on Park values. Parts of the Kellys Hill facilities however, are large and on ridge-crest sites and are visually intrusive from points on the Kelly Range and the adjoining Bald Range (outside of the Park), which are areas of outstanding scenic and other natural values. While some of the facilities are on the border of or just outside the Park, policy 13(c) of the *Conservation General Policy* (2005) requires that "Integrated management on public conservation lands and waters adjoining national parks should be complementary to and not detract from national park values."

Methods

6.4.13(a)

- 1. When processing concession applications in accordance with 6.4.3. Concessions General and Policies 6.4.13(a) & (b) independent professional advice may be sought to confirm that there is no alternative site or series of sites outside of the Park, that there is not suitable alternative equipment or technology, or that facilities cannot be co-sited.**
- 2. In all but exceptional circumstances, telephone lines should be underground. Where practical, the eventual removal of existing overhead facilities will be encouraged and instead placed underground. The Department will continue to consult with telephone line providers over this.**
- 3. Where facilities must be above-ground, they should be designed and painted to blend into the environment as far as possible, unless otherwise required for aviation safety reasons.**
- 4. Prior notice of any intended maintenance work will be required, and supervision by Department staff will be required, whenever any disturbance of vegetation or other Park values is likely.**

6.4.13(b)

The review of the Kellys Hill facility concessions should be undertaken as soon as possible in accordance with review conditions in the existing concessions.

6.4.14 Concessions and Other Uses Outcomes

- 1. Ngāi Tahu has an ongoing customary use connection with the Park, using methods that have minimal impacts on the Park's natural values, but which enhance their tangata whenua kaitiaki role for the Park.**
- 2. All concessionaire activities, including essential regional facilities, within the Park are meeting high standards for preservation of the Park's natural values and enabling of public use, while undertaking their operations.**
- 3. Concessionaires are providing a valued service in guiding public groups and extending recreational opportunities within the Park.**
- 4. The Park continues to be characterised as an area with minimal aircraft activity, allowing public use within a predominantly natural quiet setting.**
- 5. Research and monitoring is encouraged and is providing additional knowledge about the Park and valuable information for Park management.**

7. The Aickens to Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The 'corridor' from Aickens in the north to Bealey Spur and Cora Lynn in the south is the setting for a concentrated set of national park values and uses. It is adjoined by three settlements and three major and several other public utilities run through it.

For the purposes of this Plan the corridor is the area shown on Figures 4 and 4A, between Aickens and Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn, of "backcountry accessible - motorised" and "backcountry walk-in" (see 2.5.2 Recreational Opportunity Settings). The outer boundary of the backcountry walk-in setting has been determined by the degree of significant influence of the settlements and utilities, using for the boundary a combination of bush edges, ridgelines, dominant bluffs, track ends and mountain-slope changes.

The national park values within this area comprise:

- a full sequence from West Coast rainforest and steeper river valleys, through an alpine zone to the Canterbury high country's beech forests, tussock lands and wide open braided river valleys;
- an outstanding Otira River catchment rata/kamahahi forest protected by many years of possum control;
- dramatic scenery;
- a remnant roroa/great spotted kiwi population;
- an internationally significant collection of the Cockayne botanical transects;
- geopreservation sites and the Otira hot spring;
- numerous historic sites associated with passing through Arthur's Pass and its historic transport infrastructure;
- a concentration of walks, tracks and routes taking visitors along nature trails, to scenic highlights, to alpine valleys and bush lines, and giving access for mountain climbing and skiing;
- the Temple Basin ski field; and
- roadside shelters and camping sites at Kellys Creek, Arthur's Pass, Greyneys and Klondyke Corner.

Settlements and utilities adjoining or passing through the Park corridor include:

- Otira and Arthur's Pass villages and the Bealey Spur settlement;

- State Highway 73, recently upgraded and becoming the major east-west highway and now generating per year over 500,000 vehicle movements and many people who visit or pass through and view the Park;
- the Midland Railway, route of the Trans Alpine passenger train, increasing coal train traffic from the West Coast mines to the port of Lyttelton and other freight;
- the Transpower electricity power pylon route, feeding from Lake Coleridge to Hokitika;
- water supplies for Otira and Arthur's Pass villages;
- telecommunication facilities and survey stations; and
- the Temple Basin ski field.

Threats and issues for Park management along the corridor include:

- fire risk, particularly at the drier Bealey Spur and along the State Highway and railway;
- physical and landscape impacts on the Park through State Highway and utility upgrades and maintenance, and from Temple Basin ski field;
- potential water quality impacts from road and rail traffic, Temple Basin ski field and from visitor and settlement activity;
- introduced animal threats to both native vegetation and animal species;
- introduced plant threats within waterways, to the open riverbeds and to tussock lands;
- visitor pressures, both on the Park's natural values and on visitor interactions, at some localities;
- potential damage to geopreservation, geothermal and historic sites and to the Cockayne vegetation transects through utility upgrades and maintenance;
- loss of scenic values through inappropriate developments in and adjoining the Park;
- visitor safety with pedestrian and vehicle movement along, onto and/or across the State Highway and the Midland Railway;
- loss of natural quiet and natural darkness; and
- loss of amenity values through inappropriate development at Arthur's Pass village.

Opportunities for Park management within the corridor:

- ongoing protection of rata/kamahi flowering forests;
- the survival of localised roroa/great spotted kiwi populations;
- scope to improve recreational opportunities and maximise the national park preservation message to many visitors;
- community involvement in caring for the Park and its values; and
- demonstration of high-quality standards for utilities within or passing through a national park;

7.2 CORRIDOR OBJECTIVES, POLICIES AND OUTCOMES

7.2.1 Corridor Objectives

1. A corridor where the Park's natural features (including landscape and natural darkness) remain dominant.
2. A corridor where indigenous species and ecosystems are protected and particular values (rata/kamahahi forest, roroa/great spotted kiwi, Cockayne transects) receive specific attention.
3. Recognition of the scenic wonder of crossing the Southern Alps/Ka Tiritiri o te Moana and passing from Canterbury to West Coast landscapes.
4. Recognition of the modern-day transport and utility modes through the Pass and their development history right back to the pounamu ara hikoi.
5. High quality utility design and maintenance that reflect national park values.
6. The provision of utilities to the villages and ski field in accordance with approved concessions.
7. Community involvement in respecting and caring for national park values.
8. An Arthur's Pass village and Bealey Spur settlement that blend well with the Park, with the village being a significant 'front door' to the Park.

Index to The Aickens to Bealey Spur/Cora Lynn Corridor policy and outcomes sections

7.2.2	Indigenous Plants and Animals	154
7.2.3	Geological Features	155
7.2.4	Historic Features and Memorials	155
7.2.5	Introduced Plants and Animals	155
7.2.6	Public Access, Use and Facilities	157
7.2.7	Landscape Management	158
7.2.8	Catchment Management	160
7.2.9	State Highway 73	163
7.2.10	Midland Railway	179
7.2.11	Power Transmission	181
7.2.12	Temple Basin Ski Field and Lodges	184
7.2.13	Otira and Arthur's Pass Villages and Bealey Spur Settlement	189
7.2.14	Corridor Outcomes	192

Corridor Policies

Many policies for the whole Park (see sections 6.2 to 6.4) are also relevant to the corridor and these policies need to be read when considering actions within the corridor, along with the more specific policies in 7.2.2 to 7.2.6 below. Policy sections 7.2.7 to 7.2.13 cover matters not dealt with in the Section 6 policies and that are wholly specific to the corridor. The policies are sufficiently specific to be applied to Departmental actions or where concessions are being sought, or they can be applied through the methods in other cross-referenced policy sections.

7.2.2 Indigenous Plants and Animals

Policies

7.2.2(a)

To preserve the Otira, Deception and Rolleston valleys rata/kamahi forest as far as possible in its natural state.

7.2.2(b)

Public or network utility activities should avoid any adverse effects on the Arthur's Pass summit tarns and vegetation, the Cockayne botanical transects and on any local population or individual roroa/great spotted kiwi.

7.2.2(c)

To encourage and/or implement the re-surveying of the Cockayne botanical transects and the publishing of the results at intervals that both maintain some continuity of recording personnel and may assist in detecting responses to wider environmental change.

(See also policy section 6.2.2)

Explanation

7.2.2(a) - The Otira, Deception and Rolleston valleys rata/kamahi forest is a particularly well protected and publicly appreciated feature within the corridor, due to over twenty years of possum control.

7.2.2(b) - The summit tarns and vegetation are an outstanding feature of the Pass and are a centrepiece of the Dobson Nature Walk. The Cockayne transects are of high scientific significance, but are vulnerable to disturbance by public facility development or network utility activity.

The roroa/great spotted kiwi population within the corridor may have a tenuous hold on survival. While predator control may be difficult to achieve, the Arthur's Pass community has embarked on a stoat-trapping and monitoring programme within the Bealey and it is essential at least to avoid direct human impacts on kiwi.

7.2.3 Geological Features

Policy

7.2.3

To avoid any adverse effects of public or network utility activity on the Arthur's Pass summit moraine and the Otira River geothermal spring.

(See also policy section 6.2.3)

Explanation

7.2.3 - Geological features within the Park are usually robust, but these two features are right beside the State Highway and other utilities and are vulnerable. The main impact on the spring since historic times has probably been a natural rock slide through which the spring now seeps, to provide a whiff for passing travellers.

7.2.4 Historic Features and Memorials

Policies

7.2.4(a)

To give particular attention to the protection and interpretation of historic features through the corridor, including those related features that may lie just outside the Park, that reflect the history of human travel from ara hikoī to modern road and rail, and the stories of those travellers who stopped for recreational and scientific enquiry and enjoyment.

7.2.4(b)

To continue to support the provision of a memorial book to acknowledge those persons who have had a long-standing or significant relationship with the Park, or who died within the Park.

Explanation

7.2.4(a) - "The Pass" is a hugely significant part of the history of Canterbury and Westland, from ara hikoī to Otira viaduct, with many opportunities to both protect significant features and to tell their associated stories. All development proposals within the corridor, both by the Department and concessionaires, need to pay particular attention to historic feature protection and to opportunities for interpretation (see also policy section 6.2.4).

7.2.4(b) - Within the Arthur's Pass Chapel is a memorial book maintained by the Chapel Committee. This memorial book allows for people to be remembered without locating memorials within the Park itself (see also policy section 6.2.4).

7.2.5 Introduced Plants and Animals

Policies

7.2.5(a) - **To maintain the long-running possum control programme within the Otira, Deception and Rolleston valleys.**

7.2.5(b) - To support the Arthur's Pass community's mustelid control and monitoring programme for the protection of roroa/great spotted kiwi.

7.2.5(c) - To work with the community to achieve domestic animal control through the corridor, including the enforcement of controls within the Park, and to investigate with Selwyn District Council the introduction of bylaws for dog control.

7.2.5(d) - To work with the community to discourage the introduction of pest plant species within Otira valley and Arthur's Pass village, avoid their introduction to the Park, and to undertake and support control programmes within and adjoining the Park.

Explanation

7.2.5(a) - This policy simply reinforces that of 7.2.2(a).

7.2.5(b) - The Arthur's Pass community's mustelid trapping and monitoring programme is a valuable initiative that may, at least, minimise bird deaths within this roroa/great spotted kiwi population until such time as research better determines the long-term survival chances of the population and/or more effective mustelid control techniques are developed.

7.2.5(c) - Due to the very close proximity of roroa/great spotted kiwi, it is essential that cats and dogs do not enter the Park, preferably are not kept within the village and are kept under tight control when within or passing through the corridor. This is especially so at and adjoining Arthur's Pass village where there are a high number of potential cat- and/or dog-owning visitors. The regular visitor/resident community is generally well aware of and support the need for controls, but ongoing education and vigilance is needed. There is a possibility that local body bylaws could be used to assist in dog control on lands adjoining the Park where there is a risk to kiwi. Incidents elsewhere in New Zealand show that one roaming dog can be disastrous to kiwi.

7.2.5(d) - 'Garden' plants growing on private land can become pest plants within the Park should they spread from the garden. Russell lupin grown at Arthur's Pass village has done exactly this and have been one source of the infestation within the Bealey and subsequently the Waimakariri riverbeds. Of particular concern are species that can readily colonise within the open riverbed and river flat habitats and the forest and alpine habitats. These are species such as Russell lupin, rhododendron and heather (see *Wicked Weeds to Watch Out For in... Waimakariri Area* (2002)). The *Proposed Selwyn District Plan* does have controls on the introduction or planting of exotic trees within Arthur's Pass village.

The Otira community obtained Project Crimson funding for suitable tree planting within the village and rata/kamahi forest interpretation panels. The Arthur's Pass community has a Weedbusters programme for Russell lupin and other pest plant control around the village.

For all these 7.2.5 policies see also policy sections 6.2.5 and 6.2.6.

7.2.6 Public Access, Use and Facilities

Policies

7.2.6(a)

To provide public facilities that:

- cater for short walks from Arthur's Pass village and State Highway 73, designed to cater for high levels of public use and/or for ease of use;
- provide access to the above-bush line alpine areas;
- enable pedestrians to walk between Arthur's Pass village and the upper Otira valley while largely avoiding State Highway 73; and
- provide some on-site interpretation at sites between the Waimakariri River and the Otira Gorge.

7.2.6(b)

To maintain the Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre as the main information and interpretation centre for the Park, as one of the Department's Icon Visitor Centres.

Explanation

7.2.6(a) - By far the largest number of visitors to the Park are those using the short walks, tracks and roadside facilities along the corridor. Arthur's Pass village is a main starting point or accommodation base for these visitors. Walks and tracks require high design standards to handle high public use, minimise congestion and hence any reduction of the public recreational experience and minimise ongoing maintenance. Suitable design standards are set out in the Department's national guidelines (see Explanation 6.3.3(a) to (d)).

Currently there are several disconnected walks and tracks between and within the village vicinity and the upper Bealey/Otira valleys. Also the State Highway 73 upgrade and its increased usage have made the road-edge much less desirable than in the past for walking between the village and the upper Bealey/Otira valleys. To provide better connections and to avoid the Highway, track extensions are proposed (see Figure 4A) that will link the village to the upper Otira valley.

Long-established tracks to the bush line and to Avalanche Peak will be maintained for the fitter members of the public wishing to explore the alpine basins and climb the surrounding peaks.

The high number of visitors along the corridor encourages the provision of on-site interpretation to highlight the Park's values and tell its stories.

7.2.6(b) - The Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre is nationally one of the Department's most visited centres. As an Icon Visitor Centre (*Visitor and Information Centre Strategy* 2001) it provides a range of services, good interpretation of the Park and will tell the Department's national and international conservation stories. It is well supported by the community. This level of service and interpretation will be continued.

(See also policy sections 6.3.2 to 6.3.7)

7.2.7 Landscape Management

Policies

7.2.7(a)

To preserve the distinctive scenery and natural features of the corridor within the Park as far as possible, including avoiding interference with natural processes and patterns.

7.2.7(b)

To design and locate facilities to minimise their impact on the landscape and to apply landscape restoration techniques where necessary to land that has been damaged during the provision of facilities and services.

7.2.7(c)

To recognise the significance of the State Highway and Midland Railway as entranceways to the Park's landscapes and to seek the mitigation where practicable of any adverse effects of the road and railway.

7.2.7(d)

In redesigning camping facilities at Klondyke Corner particular attention should be given to avoiding any visually prominent effects of larger vehicles.

Explanation

7.2.7(a) - The Park is renowned for its high quality alpine and high country scenery which, for much of the public, is experienced primarily through the corridor. Most of this scenery can be retained with indirect management to prevent unnatural change (see 6.2.5 Introduced Animals, 6.2.6 Introduced Plants, 6.2.8 Fire Control and 6.3.3 Public Facilities). Advocacy through Resource Management Act processes may be needed in response to development proposals adjoining the Park (see Method 7.2.13(a), (b), & (c)).

7.2.7(b) - Active landscape management is needed within the corridor where there are intrusions into the natural landscape in the form of facilities and services. Sensitive siting, design and landscape modification can alleviate many of the potential landscape impacts.

7.2.7(c) - The State Highway and Midland Railway provide dramatic views of the Park, but also have introduced features (e.g. riverbank protection works and tree plantings, old road alignments, spoil and road gravel storage areas) that adversely affect the Park's entranceway landscapes. Some of these features are within the Park, others are on adjoining lands. It is desirable to mitigate the effects of these features and allow natural processes to dominate where possible.

7.2.7(d) - The Department is considering improvements to the Klondyke Corner campsites. This is a highly visible site from the State Highway entranceway to the Park and will need sensitivity, especially if providing for visually dominant white campervans.

Methods

7.2.7(a), (b) & (d)

- 1. The need for landscape modification and landscape restoration should be kept to a minimum by placing an initial emphasis on the justification, appropriate siting and design of facilities.**
- 2. Facility design should seek to blend in and reduce the impact of facilities on natural landscapes.**
- 3. Where facility design involves earthworks, then, as well as restoring an appropriate vegetation cover to disturbed areas, the earthworks should be designed so as not to increase the potential for erosion or for debris to obstruct watercourses. Revegetation may include fertilising and planting out of plants that have been grown elsewhere from seed or cuttings collected in the park and its vicinity. Any landscape restoration activities have to be in accordance with the 6.2.2 Indigenous Plants and Animals policies, including the collection of indigenous seed and cuttings for propagation purposes.**
- 4. Attention to mitigating impacts, including by landscape restoration, should be a condition of concessions where relevant, to ensure a common standard of quality of Park landscapes.**

7.2.7(c)

Areas that require particular landscape mitigation attention include:

- State Highway 73 road environs, both throughout the process of Highway upgrading and ongoing maintenance and where roading materials or spoil is stock-piled and dumped (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73);**
- Temple Basin car park and goods-lift area (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73 and 7.2.12 Temple Basin Ski Field);**
- The historic Bealey hotel site / Park entrance sign;**
- Punchbowl car park at the northern end of Arthur's Pass village;**
- Arthur's Pass railway yards (see 7.2.10 Midland Railway and 7.2.13 Otira and Arthur's Pass villages and Bealey Spur settlement); and**
- Arthur's Pass village river protection works.**

7.2.8 Catchment Management

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

7.2.8(a)

To manage the Park so that as far as possible the quantity and quality of the waters and snowfields and the condition of the water channels are maintained in a natural state.

7.2.8(b)

To permit the Park to be used as a water catchment supply to service the needs of Park visitors and Arthur's Pass and Otira villages and to recognise the potential need for activity control within those water supply catchments.

Explanation

7.2.8(a) & (b) - The attraction of Arthur's Pass National Park is in part dependent on the pristine nature of its snowfields, rivers and streams. Every effort needs to be made to preserve that condition. Maintaining the natural state cannot be absolute as this would prevent a range of recreational activities and protection works for facilities, which are of benefit to public use and enjoyment of the Park.

Activities within the corridor are the most likely, but not necessarily the only, source of any water contamination and/or water channel disturbance within the Park, including from the following:

- road and rail construction, maintenance and accidents;
- Arthur's Pass village sewage discharges;
- Temple Basin ski field sewage discharges;
- seepage from public toilets at roadside shelters;
- the storage and use of liquid fuels, herbicides, pesticides and other toxic substances;
- the disposal of poisoned introduced animal carcasses;
- the dumping of campervan wastes;
- inappropriate toileting practices by visitors;
- river protection works for roads, railway and the villages; and
- vehicle use in riverbeds during power transmission line works.

Recordings in the Park to date have shown very high water quality, although concern has been expressed about potential contamination of the Arthur's Pass village water supply should the public have access to the supply point. There is potential for contamination of the Bealey River downstream of Arthur's Pass village should the village's sewage discharge loading exceed treatment and ground filtering capacities. Presently though, there are no significant health hazards and this situation should remain the long-term aim,

with all Park waters being drinkable except where natural events would suggest otherwise.

Department-provided public toilets through the corridor are available at Arthur's Pass village, Temple Basin and the Kellys Creek, Greneys and Klondyke Corner shelters. The Department complies with relevant regional rules on the disposal of human waste. Other public toilets are available at the various cafes and the railway stations.

The Park is a water supply source for both Otira and Arthur's Pass villages, but only the Arthur's Pass intake is within the Park.

River protection works were undertaken in the Bealey riverbed sometime pre-1980s, to protect the northern end of Arthur's Pass village, with some recent maintenance. The resulting landscape has a bulldozed aspect, but some re-colonisation by native riverbed plants is occurring. It is unclear if any National Parks Act approval was obtained.

West Coast and Canterbury Regional Councils have statutory responsibilities in the Park relating to soil conservation and water management (quality and use). For Canterbury, the *Waimakariri River Regional Plan* seeks to maintain the natural quality of the water within the Park.

Methods

7.2.8(a)

- 1. Provide for the limited use of water, snow and ice where this is of direct benefit to approved facilities and services in the Park. Guidelines on potability which are in compliance with relevant legislation should be followed and advice obtained as required.**
- 2. Every effort should be made to ensure that the disposal of solid and liquid wastes from all types of accommodation and facilities in and adjoining the Park is carried out in such a manner that it does not degrade the quality of the waters in the Park (see also 6.3.3 Public Facilities).**
- 3. Actions should be taken to avoid the potential for pollution of the waters within the Park, including:**
 - i. the correct storage of liquid fuels and other toxic substances;**
 - ii. requiring refuelling of machinery away from water courses and river beds;**
 - iii. the correct use of herbicides, pesticides and other chemical sprays in accordance with best industry practice and legislative requirements;**
 - iv. appropriate design and location of toilets;**
 - v. requiring the maintenance of a sewage treatment system at Temple Basin that ensures no effluent discharge to waterways, either directly or indirectly (see 7.2.12 Temple Basin Ski Field);**
 - vi. working with Selwyn District Council to provide a campervan waste discharge site at Arthur's Pass village and/or to encourage the use of other such sites outside the Park;**

vii. working with the West Coast and Canterbury Regional Councils, Transit New Zealand and New Zealand Railways Corporation to establish pollution control procedures associated with road and railway activities (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73 and 7.2.10 Midland Railway), including Transit New Zealand use of de-icing chemicals; and

viii. providing public information about avoiding water contamination.

4. Water channels should be kept free and unrestricted by structures, but may have track and road bridges or culverts, or have stopbanks or graded riverbeds to direct water flows away from approved facilities and services. As a general rule, protection works must be appropriate to satisfy the requirements of legislation dealing with buildings in terms of the probability of damage to them. Higher levels of probability are acceptable for roads and tracks.

5. The river protection works in the Bealey riverbed to protect the northern end of the Arthur's Pass village, should be assessed:

i. to ensure that for any future works approvals under the National Parks Act are obtained with due regard to appropriate environmental impact assessments; and

ii. to identify, and if feasible implement in association with Environment Canterbury and the current consent holder, any opportunities for remedial mitigation works.

6. Consultation and liaison will be maintained with both the West Coast and Canterbury Regional Councils (see also Method 7.2.13(a), (b) & (c)1).

7.2.8(b)

1. Easements will be issued under Section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980 to formalise the existing Arthur's Pass water supply system.

2. Facilities for public use in the catchments of the Goat and Avalanche Creeks above the Otira and Arthur's Pass village water supply abstraction points may be appropriate only where there is no risk of contamination of the water supply. Where practicable, means may be taken to exclude public access to the supply points.

3. Any introduced animal control operations in the catchments of the Goat and Avalanche Creeks should be undertaken to avoid contamination of the Otira and Arthur's Pass village water supplies.

7.2.9 State Highway 73

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

7.2.9(a)

To recognise State Highway 73 as a necessary highway link between Canterbury and the West Coast that also assists visitor experience of, and access to, the alpine scenic character of the Park.

7.2.9(b)

To allow on Park land improvements, possible realignments and maintenance of State Highway 73 that:

- i. are sympathetic to the Park's alpine natural, historic, cultural and scenic character; and**
- ii. are at a level necessary for its safe use; and**
- iii generally follows the line of the 1993 highway.**

7.2.9(c)

To set appropriate conditions to avoid, remedy or mitigate any adverse effects of approved State Highway 73 works which encroach into the Park.

7.2.9(d)

To strongly encourage Transit New Zealand to use all reasonable means to avoid and control the introduction of weeds (pest plants) within the legal road and to require all such reasonable means when operating within Park land.

7.2.9(e)

To allow the setting apart of any approved road realignment as legal road, seek the rehabilitation of surplus legal road and its incorporation into the Park.

7.2.9(f)

To promote the safety of pedestrians using the road through the Park, particularly between Arthur's Pass village and Temple Basin carpark.

7.2.9(g)

To maintain close liaison and confer with Transit New Zealand regarding:

- i. all works necessary to protect, maintain and improve the highway;**
- ii. Park facilities adjoining, or which may impinge on, State Highway 73; and**
- iii. activities on the State highway that may affect the Park's values and public enjoyment of them.**

Explanation

7.2.9(a), (b) & (c) - The 37 km of State Highway 73 through the Park is recognised as an essential east/west route. It is controlled and managed by Transit New Zealand, which is the Road Controlling Authority responsible for the management and safety of the State highway. One of Transit New Zealand's goals is to maintain and improve the State highway between Canterbury and Westland. This highway is still largely on the line of the coaching road identified by Arthur Dudley Dobson and built to give access from Canterbury at the time of the West Coast gold rush in the 1860s. The road was subsequently widened to take motor vehicles and was sealed in the 1960s.

Major road realignments and bridge improvement works have since been undertaken and during the 2000s have included the Otira Viaduct, the White Bridge replacement, the Candy's Bend to Starvation Point two-lane widening, Otira railway underpass and the Bluff Creek realignment.

The existing route has considerable historic value, but continues to have deficiencies with regard to alignment, width and grade for a regionally significant arterial route which is classified as a Class 1 highway. Highway improvements in the Otira Gorge and at the Otira railway underpass have resulted in increased use and more heavy vehicles. The narrow carriageway, coupled with tight curvatures and reduced sight distances, particularly between Mingha Bluff and Rough Creek, is of particular concern for Transit and for road users.

Traffic volumes average 1470 vehicles per day (2005, measured in Arthur's Pass village), with 9% heavy vehicles. Potential improvements proposed by Transit New Zealand are likely to cost in the order of \$15 million over the next 10-20 years (in 2004 dollars).

The highway is both a major through route and a source of many viewing and entry points for the Park. With its enclosing beech forests, shrubland, spectacular mountain views and the deep Otira Gorge, especially beautiful when rata is in flower, it is considered by many to be one of New Zealand's finest tourist routes.

Such a scenic route demands a careful balance of requirements for all road users (travellers and Park visitors), for user safety and the preservation of national park values.

Transit New Zealand has published technical, engineering, social and environmental investigations for the highway where it passes through Arthur's Pass National Park. These include:

- *Draft Scoping Report: SH73 Mingha Bluff to Rough Creek RP136/4.80 to 9.02.* 2004. Transit New Zealand, Christchurch.
- *Draft Road Management Plan.* 1991. Transit New Zealand, Christchurch.
- *State Highway 73 Arthur's Pass National Park: Environmental Impact Assessment Volumes i and ii.* 1987. M.O.W.D., Christchurch.
- *SH.73 Arthur's Pass Roading Project - Planning Study: Technical Report - Environmental Factors.* 1987. M.O.W.D., Christchurch.

In the *State Highway 73 (Arthur's Pass National Park) Road Management Plan* (nd), Transit New Zealand identified proposals for future highway realignments, from which future options are evaluated. Transit New Zealand recognise that all works will require ongoing consultation with the Department as design and construction details are finalised. The works proposed on the highway can be divided into a series of discrete project areas, some of which have already been improved.

The environmental studies also resulted in a Road Improvement Corridor that was identified within the *Arthur's Pass National Park Management Plan* (1994) and within which most of the recent and future highway works were or will be carried out. The studies confirm that for most of the 37 km (between Waimakariri River and Aickens - see Figures 5A, B & C) the Road Improvement Corridor follows the existing road. For some stretches of the highway roading options have not been investigated in detail. This means that further investigations may provide alternative roading options outside of the corridor.

The purpose of the Road Improvement Corridor is:

- to mark the extent of national park land within which most options for future highway improvements may be considered;
- to give the Minister policy control over where works can generally be expected; and
- to give the public a better understanding of where, within the Park, roading works can be considered.

The corridor sets out the area within which most roading options will be considered. Exceptions to the corridor are for the Arthur's Pass summit area, issues of significant public safety, cases of emergency and situations where more information becomes available in the detailed design phase.

Transit New Zealand's (1991) proposed roading realignments in the Arthur's Pass summit area were not considered feasible because of the high environmental, historic and cultural values of this area. For this reason, no road improvement corridor was identified for this area (See Figure 5A).

In some places, particularly where major engineering problems exist, the corridor has been widened to allow a range of options to be considered (i.e. from Mingha Bluff to Rough Creek, and other bends in the highway).

Once a roading option has been finalised, the amount of land used for roading will be considerably less than the corridor itself. The corridor does not imply that the area will be developed for roading purposes, only that it is the area where roading options will generally be considered. It therefore does not sanction any particular roading options.

State Highway-related works within the Park (as at 2005), that are not within the roading corridor, include:

- spoil and road material storage beside the Bealey rail bridge;
- gravel extraction from Waimakariri riverbed at Bealey Bridge;
- Waimakariri River protection works from Bealey Bridge to Klondyke Corner; and

- Kellys Creek river protection works.

Proposed Roding Works (not yet approved) include:

- Rough Creek to Snow Creek realignment;
- road widening generally and reconstruction, between Arthur's Pass village and Klondyke Corner vicinity;
- road realignment in the Arthur's Pass - McGrath Stream vicinity;
- Lake Misery to Pegleg flat;
- road realignment on the Arthur's Pass summit;
- road realignment at Rough Creek Bridge; and
- minor encroachments as set out on Tables 14-15 of the *Draft Road Management Plan* (1991).

7.2.9(d) - Road construction machinery and the 'importing' of rock, gravel and soil can be major sources for introducing weeds into the Park (see also 6.2.6 Introduced Plants). For this reason it is important that machinery is cleaned before use in or adjoining the Park, that clean borrow sources are used (usually from within the Park and, if a riverbed source, then upstream of any weed infestation), that in road realignments the local topsoil is retained and re-used and that there is ongoing monitoring and removal of weed plants on former construction sites and alongside the highway where grit is spread on the road during the winter. To assist these ends the *General Policy* allows for controlled rock and gravel extraction from national parks.

7.2.9(e) - Where the State highway's legal road is surveyed it is normally 20 metres wide, with some approximately 40 metre wide sections. Where the existing highway is not located on legal road, it has been agreed that the legal road alignment can reasonably be taken as 10 metres either side of the centre line of the existing highway (this is defined as nominal legal road). However, there will be variations in the legal road width in some areas, with allowances to protect the stability of batters and ongoing maintenance of structures. It is considered that the present incomplete legal survey will be finalised as roading improvements are completed, desirably leading to a legalisation of the entire State Highway 73 route. Where the highway is realigned and Park land is taken for road the former legal road land is transferred to the Park. These legalisation and transfer processes are currently (2005) underway for the Otira valley realignments. The National Parks Act allows for such processes following road construction approvals.

7.2.9(f) - Pedestrian use of the highway, especially between Arthur's Pass village and the Pass itself, does occur but previously was more frequent than currently occurs with the now increased traffic volumes. Some provision for pedestrians is being provided alongside the highway.

7.2.9(g) - A *Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) between Transit New Zealand and Department of Conservation* (2005) formalises a working relationship between the two organisations in meeting their statutory obligations. Specific guidelines for State highways through or adjoining national parks and other public conservation lands are to be developed for general guidance during all maintenance and construction of highways. In

time these guidelines may reduce the need for some of the provisions within the Methods below.

There is a number of well-developed rest areas, viewing points and roadside stopping places alongside the State highway, for which the Department and Transit New Zealand share management responsibility.

From time to time Transit approves non-roading activities along the highway, such as car advertisement filming or information signage, subject to conditions to minimise disruption of, or distraction from, public use of the highway. These activities however, can still affect Park visitors' appreciation of the Park's values, such as with the currently (2005) incongruous placement of the West Coast Fish and Game Council and Westland District Council signs just west of the Arthur's Pass summit.

Transit holds resource consents for the use of de-icing chemicals on the State highway. The consent process dealt well with the issue of potential adverse effects on national park values. Any proposed use of other chemicals would require a similar process.

Methods

7.2.9(a), (b) & (c)

1. Road location. Before any road work is programmed the Department will require Transit New Zealand to determine whether the proposed work is on Park land and, if it is, then require the seeking of section 55 National Parks Act authorisation to construct a road.

2. Roading investigations. The Minister may consider and approve under Section 55(2) of the National Parks Act, subject to conditions, the investigation of roading options in and/or adjacent to the Road Improvement Corridor where:

- i. the criteria in Method 3 Roothing Approval have been considered and met;**
- ii. an environmental impact assessment in accordance with Method 5 has been prepared; and**
- iii relevant sections of Method 8, Park vegetation, are applied if Park vegetation is to be removed as part of roading investigations.**

3. Roothing approval.

3.1 The Minister may consider and approve the construction of a road within the Road Improvement Corridor under Section 55(2) of the National Parks Act on Park land, subject to conditions, where:

- i. feasible options for realignment or reconstruction cannot be accommodated within an existing legal road;**
- ii. the environmental impact procedures are satisfied;**
- iii the proposal is supported as being in the best overall interest of the Park,**

- iv. construction and maintenance are demonstrated to be of a character which avoids, remedies or mitigates any adverse effects (see Methods 7 and 8); and
- v. redundant legal road will be rehabilitated to a reasonable standard, except where necessary to comply with other criteria, e.g. Method 6.3.6(a)3.

3.2 No road works should be approved in the Park which would adversely affect:

- i. threatened plant, fish or animal species or their habitats;
- ii. indigenous fish passage requirements;
- iii. recognised ecologically sensitive areas or scientifically significant ecological systems;
- iv. the Cockayne botanical transects;
- v. recognised historical features;
- vi. sites of significant cultural value;
- vii. significant landforms, geological features and soil sequences, including the Arthur's Pass terminal moraine loop;
- viii. the Otira gorge geothermal spring; or
- ix. significant visual features.

3.3 All applications to construct a road should conform to the policy, methods and criteria of this and other relevant management plan sections.

4. Other road alignments.

4.1 The Minister may consider and approve applications under Section 55(2) of the National Parks Act, subject to conditions, to construct a road outside the Road Improvement Corridor under the following circumstances:

- i. within the Arthur's Pass Summit area (see Method 10 below);
- ii. where issues of significant public safety are involved. For the purposes of this criterion, public safety is defined as where there is a high actual or potential risk to the safety of highway users;
- iii. in cases of emergency. For the purposes of this criterion an emergency is defined as a natural or human event that wholly or partially closes the highway;
- iv. where information comes to hand at the detailed design phase that produces other roading options adjacent to the roading corridor that are worthy of consideration.

4.2 All methods and criteria relevant to applications and approvals within the Road Improvement Corridor will apply.

5. Environmental impact assessment. Each roading proposal (works or investigations) that encroaches into the Park will require an environmental impact assessment in accordance with 6.4.3 Concessions General and with due recognition of the criteria in the other methods in this section 7.2.9 State Highway 73.

6. Design and profile. The general design and profile of the highway alignment should:

- i. fit the character of the area;**
- ii. be in harmony with its setting;**
- iii. minimise excavation and embankment scars;**
- iv. where appropriate follow a curved alignment;**
- v. follow a profile that best fits into the existing topography;**
- vi. protect areas of historic and cultural significance;**
- vii. preserve as much native vegetation as possible;**
- viii. ensure structures are located and designed with due regard to aesthetic compatibility with surroundings;**
- ix. remove accident-promoting hazards whenever possible, endeavour to maximise road safety benefits and minimise environmental impacts;**
- x. consider water run-off and erosion impacts; and**
- xi. consider the scenic and landscape experience of the road user.**

7. Width.

7.1 The width of proposed legal road should be assessed taking into account the need to protect significant natural and landscape features. The normal State highway legal road width is 20 metres and generally is 10 metres each side of the centreline of the formed road.

7.2 Where safety is not compromised, lesser widths may be accepted.

7.3 The cross-section standard of the formed roadway should essentially be two 3.5 metre lanes (the normal standard elsewhere on rural state highways), with concrete water tables, where appropriate, to minimise width of excavation. Extra width for shoulders or wander strips may be supported where required for:

- i. emergency stopping;**
- ii. clearance of snow build-up;**
- iii. pedestrian safety;**
- iv. margins for drainage channels and rock-fall zones;**
- v. additional width on curves;**
- vi. margins for safety barriers and stability of batters; or**
- vii. margins for structure maintenance.**

8. Park vegetation.

8.1 Stands of trees and plants, which are visually significant or which contribute considerably to the existing character of the road, should be retained, unless they pose a significant risk to road users or the operation of the highway corridor (e.g. between State Highway 73 and the Bealey River, between Klondyke Corner and Arthur's Pass village). Replacement or additional plants and trees of local genetic origin may be planted to offset those lost during roading works (see 7.2.7 Landscape Management).

8.2 For areas within the Park a permit may be issued to Transit New Zealand under Section 5(1) National Parks Act 1980 for the management of vegetation, with consideration being given to the following matters:

- i. the maintenance of a canopy of forest over parts of the highway;**
- ii. the maintenance of the natural character of the vegetation;**
- iii. the avoidance of sensitive areas;**
- iv. the retention of significant visual features or views;**
- v. the maintenance of adequate sight lines;**
- vi. the minimisation of icing resulting from shading;**
- vii. the prevention of vegetation dropping onto the carriageway;**
- viii. the minimisation of frequency of large scale vegetation trimming;**
- ix. the need to avoid large scale trimming; and**
- x. the need to spray only with Departmental approval.**

9. Stockpiles, dump sites, borrow areas and river protection works.

The Minister may consider and approve under Section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980, with appropriate conditions being imposed, applications for stock piles, dump sites, borrow areas and river protection works (to the extent that their location can be influenced). Such activities should be located and considered in accordance with the following criteria:

- i. the necessity for the activity to occur in the Park;**
- ii. the impact on the Park environment generally;**
- iii. avoidance of impacts on sensitive natural features;**
- iv. avoidance of prominent scenic areas or significant view 'shafts';**
- v. avoidance of areas with cultural or historical significance;**
- vi. avoidance of popular recreation sites;**
- vii. the need for revegetation or screen planting;**
- viii. avoidance of spreading pest plants;**
- ix. the minimisation of accelerated erosion; and**
- x. avoidance of habitats of indigenous fauna.**

10. Arthur's Pass summit. If Transit New Zealand can produce a roading design that has minimal impacts on the special features of this area a Section 55 application will be considered by the Minister and may be granted if the following criteria are met:

- i. a higher standard of road alignment justifies the application;**
- ii. the roading proposal is innovatively designed and assessed with extreme sensitivity (see Method 3.2; also section 7.2.2 to 7.2.4);**
- iii. all other relevant policies, methods and criteria apply, particularly Methods 2 Roading investigations and 4 Other road alignments.**

7.2.9(d)

- 1. Every effort should be made to avoid the introduction of weeds, into the Park, through road construction and maintenance and the spreading of road grit. Should introduction occur, approved control measures will be required of Transit New Zealand.**
- 2. Vehicles, plant, equipment and tools should be thoroughly steam cleaned and free of weed material before entering the Park.**
- 3. Where Transit New Zealand intends to undertake weed management along the highway, it should be encouraged to consult and to consider co-ordinating activities with the Department's activities, with the intention of maximising the control of weeds.**
- 4. Transit New Zealand should be required to keep all its contractors informed of the above three methods.**
- 5. The Department will assist in the identification of, as far as practicable, weed-free gravel sources suitable for use within the Park (see Method 7.2.9(a), (b) & (c)9 above, and 6.4.10 Stone and Gravel Removal).**
- 6. Where a road realignment is undertaken the new alignment's existing topsoil, duff and shredded vegetation should generally be used in the rehabilitation of the closed road (see Methods 7.2.9(e)2 & 3 below).**

7.2.9(e)

- 1. Once roads are constructed, the processes for the setting apart of former national park land as legal road and the addition of any redundant legal road to national park, will be undertaken in accordance with Sections 11 and 7 of the National Parks Act 1980.**
- 2. The future use and rehabilitation of sections of closed road to be incorporated into the Park upon legalization of completed works should be addressed within the initial environmental impact procedures (see Method 7.2.9(a), (b) & (c)5 above).**
- 3. The standard and type of rehabilitation may vary in response to the different environmental factors encountered in different parts of the Park. Policy section 7.2.7 Landscape Management will apply.**

7.2.9(f)

Transit New Zealand will consider either additional seal width or purpose-built paths between Arthur's Pass village and Temple Basin carpark.

7.2.9(g)

1. In accordance with the *Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) between Transit New Zealand and Department of Conservation (2005)* and any guidelines for State Highways through public conservation lands:

i. consultation will be maintained with Transit New Zealand to ensure that any adverse effects from visitor facility development, including signs, within the Park on the safe and efficient operation of State Highway 73 can be avoided, remedied or mitigated;

ii. the Department will seek ongoing consultation on non-roading activity approvals sought from Transit and seek conditions that reflect the outcomes desired for the Park alongside the State Highway corridor.

2. Car parks, amenity areas and camp sites located within the Park adjacent to the State highway, and viewing points and roadside stopping places located on State highway legal road, should be managed as follows:

i. the Department will work with Transit New Zealand to ensure that car parks, amenity areas and camp sites within the Park (see Table 8 under 6.3.3 Public Facilities) are appropriately serviced from the State highway;

ii. Transit New Zealand will maintain all accesses off the State highway up to the boundary of the legal road, or 10m from the centreline of the carriageway if the boundary is not identified;

iii. where appropriate, Transit New Zealand will provide and maintain signage directing motorists to the facilities; and

iv. Transit New Zealand will maintain viewing points and roadside stopping places located on legal road.

3. Current viewing points and roadside stopping places located on road reserve and to be maintained by Transit New Zealand are:

i. Viaduct Lookout

ii. Candy's Bend Lookout

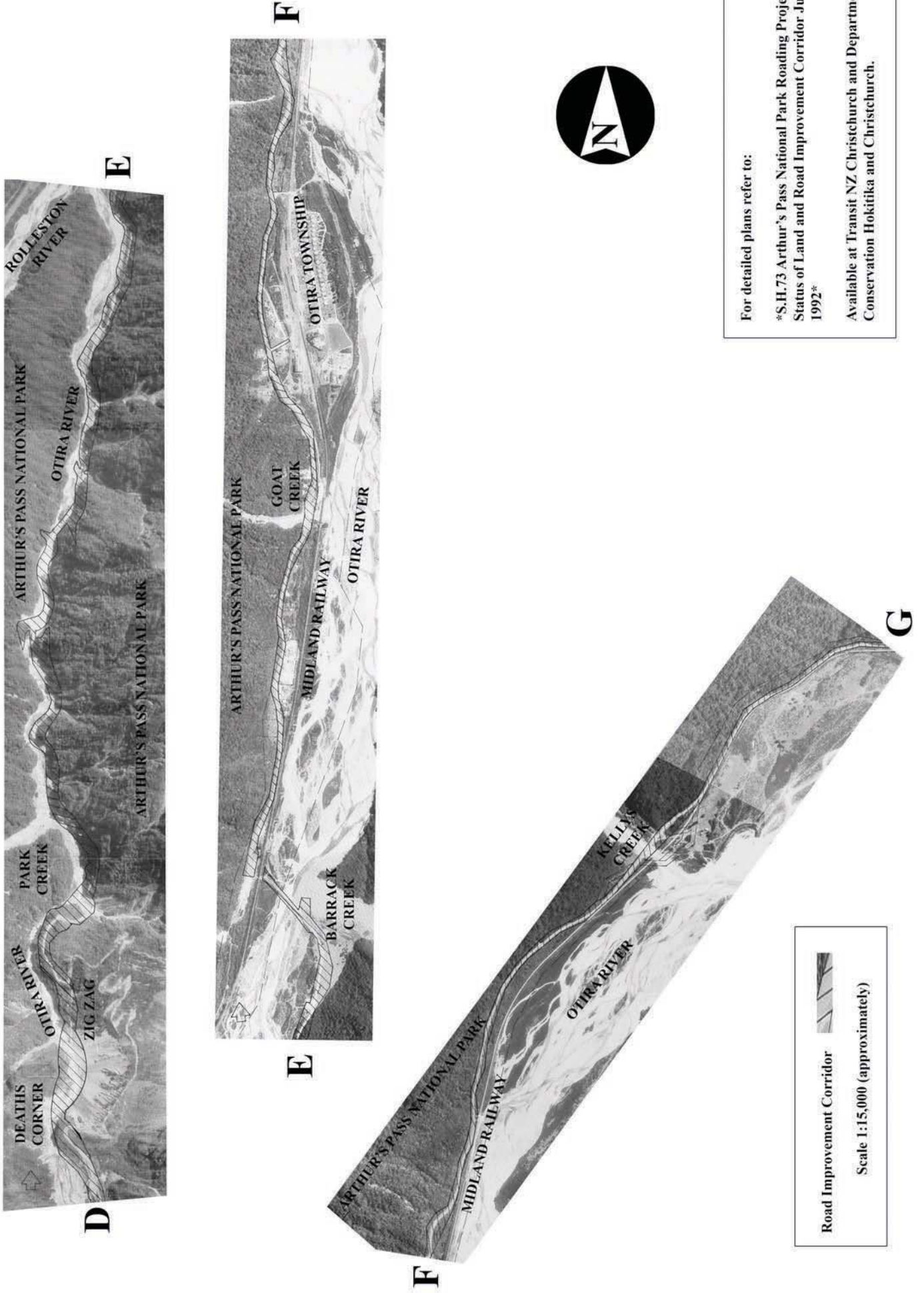
4. The Department will work with Transit New Zealand through any Resource Management Act resource consent process regarding the use of de-icing chemicals on the State Highway.

Figure 5A



**Insert SH 73 Corridor Figures 6A, 6B & 6C – three A3 pages - six page numbers –
2nd page**

Figure 5B



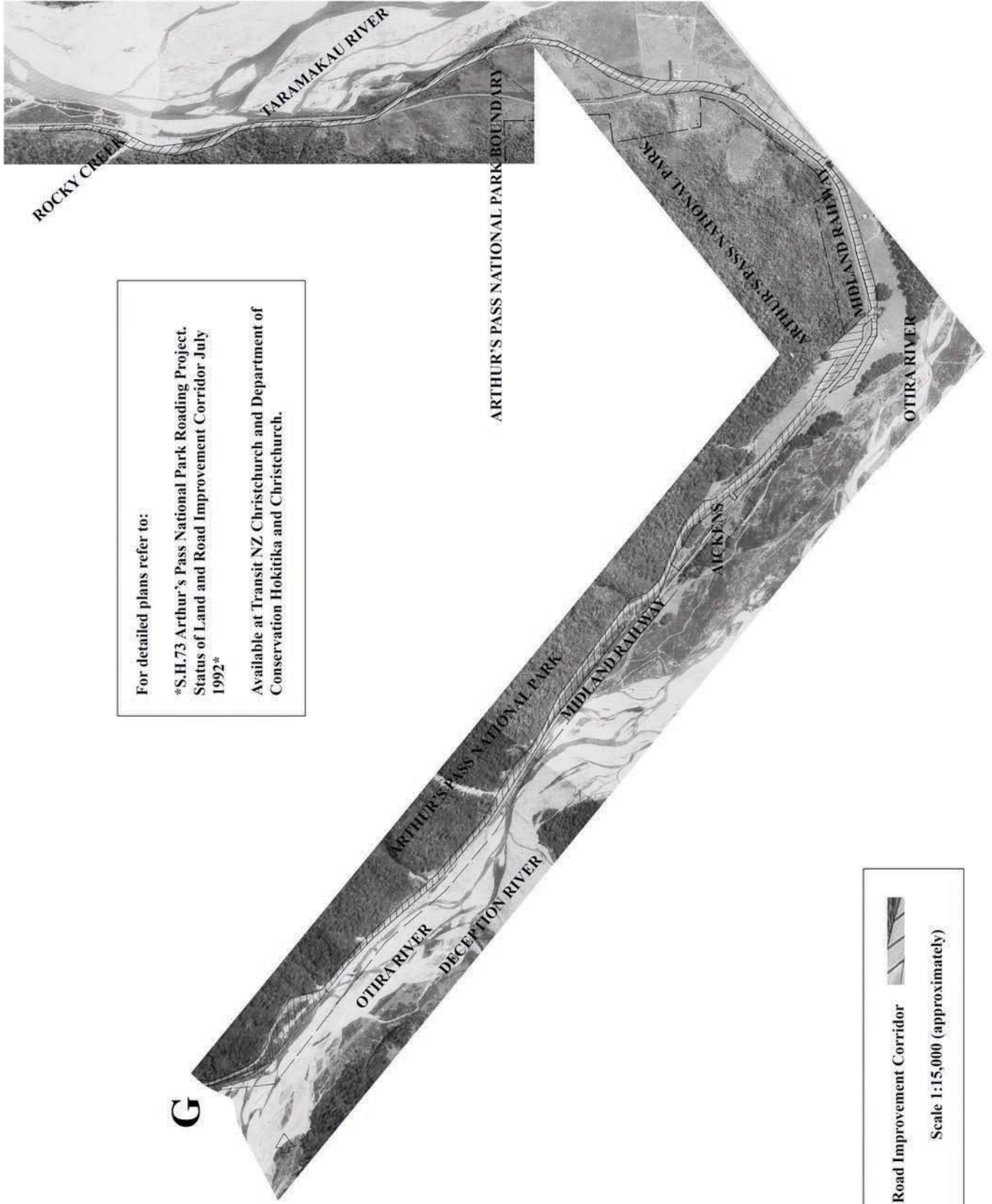
For detailed plans refer to:

*S.H.73 Arthur's Pass National Park Roading Project.
Status of Land and Road Improvement Corridor July
1992*

Available at Transit NZ, Christchurch and Department of
Conservation Hokitika and Christchurch.

**Insert SH 73 Corridor Figures 6A, 6B & 6C – three A3 pages -
six page numbers – 4th page**

Figure 5C



For detailed plans refer to:
*S.H.73 Arthur's Pass National Park Roading Project,
Status of Land and Road Improvement Corridor July
1992*
Available at Transit NZ, Christchurch and Department of
Conservation Hokitika and Christchurch.

 Road Improvement Corridor
Scale 1:15,000 (approximately)

**Insert SH 73 Corridor Figures 6A, 6B & 6C – three A3 pages -
six page numbers – 6th page**

7.2.10 Midland Railway

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

7.2.10(a)

To recognise the Midland line as a necessary railway link between Canterbury and the West Coast that in addition, enables public experience of, and access to, the alpine scenic character of the Park.

7.2.10(b)

Work associated with the operation of the Midland Railway may be allowed on Park land, where:

- i. it has been approved in accordance with this Plan;**
- ii. it is sympathetic to the Park's natural, historic, cultural and alpine scenic character; and**
- iii. it is at a level necessary for the safe use of the railway.**

7.2.10(c)

To strongly encourage New Zealand Railways Corporation to use all reasonable means to avoid and control the introduction of weeds (pest plants) within the railway lands and to require all such reasonable means when operating within Park land.

7.2.10(d)

To maintain liaison with the New Zealand Railways Corporation over the management and maintenance of land and facilities associated with the railway.

Explanation

7.2.10(a), (b),(c) & (d) - The Midland Railway is an important transport route linking the South Island's east and west coasts and provides important public transport to the Park. The railway and its associated facilities are not on Park land, although in places river protection works such as embankments and groynes are. New Zealand Railways Corporation holds Resource Management Act resource consents for riverbed works within and adjoining the Park, with consent conditions covering many environmental protection aspects. Concessions under the National Parks Act may still be required for these works.

The railway bisects the Park and this has implications for Park management and use. Railway facilities are well established and future work will likely be limited to maintenance or upgrading of existing facilities or repairs following flood damage. The railway does pose some risks to the Park, such as from fires (common along the railway to the south of the Park) and the spread of introduced plants. The Park's scenic character or views into the Park can be adversely affected by using inappropriate rock and other materials in river protection works and by lack of sensitivity for the environment during maintenance or construction works.

The New Zealand Railways Corporation (trading as ONTRACK) is the controlling authority for all core railway land within New Zealand. Through the Park this includes areas of land not directly related to the functioning of the railway. For example, two small blocks of land in the Bealey valley that may originally have been intended as quarry sites. Toll NZ Consolidated Ltd is the national rail operator. Toll NZ are responsible for the operation of both passenger and freight rail services along the Midland Railway such as the Tranz Alpine. There is a need for ONTRACK and its servicing contractors as well as Toll NZ to understand and follow any conditions established for operations within or affecting the Park. This Plan however recognises the importance of the railway as a network utility and therefore honours the reasonable and acceptable requirement to construct, maintain and operate the Midland Railway.

Methods

7.2.10(b), (c) & (d)

1. Liaise with New Zealand Railways Corporation to seek agreement on guidelines for the management of land and facilities associated with the Midland Railway where it passes through the Park. Agreement should be sought on the following issues to ensure that the Park integrity is maintained:

- i. weed control, including attention to vehicles, plant, equipment and tools being thoroughly steam cleaned and free of weed material before entering the Park;**
- ii. maintenance work, which must be in sympathy with the environmental and scenic values of the Park;**
- iii. identification of areas suitable for landscape rehabilitation, in association with Park management;**
- iv. the design, construction and mitigation of river protection works;**
- v. the location of structures which have a range of site options;**
- vi. ensuring that only uncontaminated and weed-free borrow material is brought into the area;**
- vii. building designs and colour schemes complementary to the Park;**
- viii. fire prevention and suppression; and**
- ix. conditions on resource consents under the Resource Management Act 1991 in respect of the above.**

2. Concessions approval may be granted under section 49 National Parks Act 1980 for river protection works within the Park and for the use of small quantities of river bed material for such works (see 6.4.10 Stone and Gravel Removal).

7.2.11 Power Transmission

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

7.2.11(a)

Facilities for power transmission may be allowed where:

- i. they contribute to proper and beneficial management of the Park;**
- or**
- ii. they are part of the national or regional reticulation system and no viable alternative site or series of sites exists outside of the Park;**
- and**
- iii. they can be achieved with minimum impact on the Park values or public use of the Park;**
- iv. they are approved in accordance with this Plan.**

7.2.11(b)

Conditions should be imposed on any approvals granted, to minimise the impact on the Park and prevent interference with public enjoyment and appreciation of the Park.

Explanation

7.2.11(a) & (b) - Virtually all power transmission issues for the Park occur within the corridor.

The corridor encompasses an important transalpine power transmission link and adjoins the long-established villages of Arthur's Pass and Otira. Essential services such as the Coleridge-Hokitika power transmission line must be accommodated within and adjoining the Park and power supply to the villages is acknowledged as being essential for their proper functioning. Reticulated power has also been permitted to facilitate public use and enjoyment at Temple Basin Ski Field.

In 2004 the Department signed a National Agreement with Transpower for their activities on public conservation lands. This Agreement includes a code of practice for entry onto conservation land and the process to be followed in advising of standard transmission line operations and applying for concessions for upgrades, tree trimming and new works.

An implication for transmission lines is that the New Zealand Code of Practice for Electrical Safe Distances, NZECP 34:2001, sets out the required separation distances necessary to reduce the risk of flashovers or contact between the lines and buildings, structures or vehicles. Awareness of this requirement is necessary when considering any approvals for activities or structures in the vicinity of transmission lines.

Section 49 National Parks Act 1980 permits the authorisation of new power transmission facilities where necessary for the proper management of the Park, where this is in accordance with the operative management plan. Easements may be granted under Section 49 of the Act without reference to the management plan when facilities can be sited without permanently affecting the rights of the public or materially altering or permanently affecting the Park.

Apart from the visual impact of power pylons/poles and wires, the most common potential impacts are from cutting vegetation along the line route and from vehicle access to riverbeds for maintenance work; the latter activity can encourage unwanted public vehicle use.

Methods

7.2.11(a) & (b)

1. With respect to the Coleridge-Hokitika transmission line which is recognised as an essential service, the Department will act in accordance with the Department of Conservation / Transpower National Agreement in considering Transpower work programmes and concession applications. The Department will ensure that Transpower is fully aware of the National Park boundaries.

2. Should any activity or structure be considered in the vicinity of the Coleridge-Hokitika transmission line through the Park, the Department should consult with Transpower.

3. Any application to establish new or to continue existing power routes within the Park should be considered only where:

- i. viable alternatives do not exist outside the Park and options have been considered for the use of existing structures or utilities. Independent professional advice may be sought to confirm that there is no alternative site or series of sites outside the Park, or options for using existing structures or utilities;**
- ii. the proposed facility will alleviate adverse effects of an existing power transmission facility in the Park;**
- iii. major earthworks are not involved;**
- iv. any vehicle use complies with Policy 6.3.6(b);**
- v. adequate protection against damage to Park values is guaranteed;**
- vi. regard is given to avoiding intrusions into areas of cultural or historic significance; and**
- vii. the proposed facility does not permanently affect the rights of the public with respect to the Park.**

- 3. When power installations are unavoidable because there is no reasonable alternative or it is not possible to adapt an existing site, strict conditions will be applied concerning siting, landscaping, buildings, removal of bush and provision of access. Wherever possible, underground lines should be sought.**
- 4. The provision of grid power to concessionaires in the Park should be considered only in exceptional circumstances, and only after the criteria in Method 2 above have been satisfied.**
- 5. Maintain liaison with local authorities, power suppliers and users operating within the Park to:**
 - i. seek prior advice about maintenance work and to ensure that work is supervised by staff whenever any disturbance of vegetation or other Park values is likely to occur;**
 - ii. encourage, where practical, the eventual removal or relocation underground of existing overhead power lines and poles;**
 - iii. ensure that attention is given to vehicles, plant, equipment and tools being thoroughly steam cleaned and free of weed material before entering the Park;**
 - iv. ensure that all related works in and near the Park are carried out in a manner compatible with the proper protection and visitor enjoyment of the Park;**
 - v. seek conditions on new building developments to make provision for underground power transmission in Arthur's Pass and Otira villages wherever practical.**

7.2.12 Temple Basin Ski Field and Lodges

Note that section 6.4.3 Concessions General applies whenever a concession is required.

Policies

7.2.12(a)

To support the operation of the Temple Basin ski field and accommodation lodges, when in accordance with an approved concession.

7.2.12(b)

No overall increase in the level of downhill skiing facility development (ski tows and related accommodation and facilities) should be permitted, except where:

- i. the use of existing facilities and accommodation has been maximised;**
- ii. an environmental impact assessment has been undertaken, irrespective of whether a concession, concession amendment or other approval is required, that shows that the development can be achieved with minimal environmental disturbance;**
- iii. it is compatible with the indigenous plants and animals, landscape features and aesthetic qualities of the Basin;**
- iv. it is necessary to meet existing legal commitments, or to comply with standards for public health, fire safety, structural soundness and other statutory requirements;**
- v. it is to provide accommodation for essential servicing or for ski field instructors, with preference given to upgrading existing buildings where feasible, rather than constructing new buildings;**
- vi. it is unlikely to encourage a significant increase in either the numbers of beds available or in overall visitor numbers;**
- vii. it will not conflict with other Park users, particularly during the summer months;**
- viii. it is compatible with the existing character of the Basin;**
- ix. it will not compromise the existing skiing facility which the Basin presently provides; and**
- x. there is no increased noise within the Basin.**

7.2.12(c)

Should the ski field cease to operate in accordance with a concession, alternative uses of accommodation facilities for educational purposes at Temple Basin may be considered.

Explanation

7.2.12(a) - Temple Basin was a pioneering area in the development of skiing in Canterbury and is the only area within the Park that is developed for downhill skiing. A smaller facility was operated by the West Coast Alpine Club on the Kelly Range. Other ski fields outside the Park have since been opened and developed to levels beyond that of Temple Basin, where use has remained fairly static. A variety of both club and company-operated fields now exist outside the Park in the nearby Craigieburn Range and beyond.

The ski field is operated by the Temple Basin Ski Club Incorporated and Canterbury University Snow Sports Club Incorporated (together, “the concessionaires”) in accordance with thirty year concessions issued in March 2006. The concessions include a ski field licence (which allows for other public use) and facility leases (which allow for concessionaire controlled buildings).

Outside of the concession-nominated ski season or spring thaw (June to September inclusive) the concessionaire may use the accommodation and ancillary services for commercial gain in the buildings for:

- outdoor, natural history or natural science education courses and related conferences; and
- recreational users of other approved concessionaires or non-commercial groups.

The concession also allows mountain safety instruction and training activities.

There is some uncertainty about the future economic viability of the ski field. As with all ski fields the reliability of sufficient snow varies from year to year; the lower part of the ski field is particularly susceptible to lean snow years. The future effect of climate change on Temple Basin snow cover (see 2.3.5 Climate and Hydrology) is as yet unclear; there may be a snow increase with increased westerly precipitation, or there may be a decrease with warmer temperatures and increased westerly winds and rain. One result would see the ski field continuing and perhaps thriving compared with more easterly ski fields; the other result could see the ski field cease operating. Data on climate change effects is expected to become more accurate and accepted during the life of this Plan.

Most of the existing facilities at Temple Basin are primarily associated with skiing activities and are owned, operated and/or maintained by the concessionaires for their club members and public clients. The facilities include accommodation lodges in the Main Basin, the day-visitor Page Shelter in the Downhill Basin, three ski tows (Temple, Cassidy and Downhill), the goods lift (SH 73 to Main Basin), the Temple Basin high level track and associated smaller service facilities. A ski/snowboard hire service is provided. The day-visitor Lockwood Shelter in the Main Basin is a Department-operated facility (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities).

All of Downhill Basin, including Page Shelter, is exposed to an avalanche hazard. Ski field concessionaires are required by the Department to have a certified safety plan for dealing with the avalanche risk and other hazards.

Temple Basin sewerage facilities have in the past not always been of a standard acceptable within a national park, have led to localised ground contamination and may have contributed to contamination of Twin Stream. Consistent with the policies under 7.2.8 Catchment Management, the Temple Basin sewerage facilities need to be of a very high standard.

The Temple Basin car park, the Twin Creek bridge and the beginning of the Temple Basin track, all adjoining State Highway 73, are currently on legal road, which has hindered Department and concessionaire management of the area. The transfer of this area to the Park (see Method 7.2.9(e)) will enable better car parking provisions and future management. Vehicle use of the track from the car park has occurred to date, but it is considered uneconomic to maintain this to a suitable national park standard.

On Figure 4 the Temple Basin area is zoned backcountry accessible-motorised. This zoning is in recognition of the visual and audio effects of the goods lift, ski tows and other facilities and does not allow for vehicle use.

For any use of aircraft see 6.4.8 Aircraft - these policies would exclude aircraft use at the ski field for other than essential construction and maintenance and similar exceptional circumstances.

The keeping of search and rescue dogs on-site and their use during avalanche situations and training is provided for under Policy 6.2.5(c) of 6.2.5 Introduced Animals. As Temple Basin is within a Kiwi area, any search and rescue dogs should be certified 'Kiwi safe' and must be kept under close control

7.2.12(b) - A 1980 study (Law, E. 1980) concluded that the Basin's biological carrying capacity had probably already been exceeded.

Botanical studies indicate that the Basin is of considerable significance for botanical conservation. In terms of nature study, it is the most accessible locality in the Park illustrating an altitudinal sequence of plant associations from sub alpine to high alpine. Soil and vegetation in the Basin are vulnerable to disturbance, especially during thaw periods.

In consideration of these matters the 2005 concessions largely limited ski field use to replacement or upgrading of existing facilities only.

In order to improve the skiing surface on some ski fields, especially in times of light snow cover, changing the natural look of the area ("terrain modification") by removing or shifting rocks or altering vegetation, is often carried out. Very little of this however, has been permitted at Temple Basin, usually because of adequate snow cover, the significance of vegetation present and the need to minimise impacts. Only very limited handwork would be appropriate.

Since the introduction of snow-making to some New Zealand ski fields, the concessionaire has expressed interest in the possible installation of a system at Temple Basin, using water from Twin Creek. This would require water storage, piped reticulation, a power source and may require additives to enhance the snow-making process. While there may be advantages to the

concessionaire in having snow-making there are environmental impacts involved.

Mechanical snow grooming has never been allowed in the Basin, on various environmental impact grounds including noise, difficulty of access in getting a vehicle to and between the basins, potential soil and vegetation impacts and the general minimisation of vehicle use within the Park as a whole.

7.2.12(c) -The out of ski-season activities provide supplementary income for the ski field, but are not intended to provide for any on-going future use of Temple Basin as a concessionaire developed area should the ski field cease to operate. Use limitations during the spring thaw are because the soils and vegetation at that time are most vulnerable to trampling.

In the event of ski field activities permanently ceasing, policy 7.2.12(c) contemplates a review of the remaining activities conducted pursuant to the concession.

Methods

7.2.12 (a)

1. An Indicative Operational Plan should be provided to the Department by the concessionaire, to be approved five yearly. The plan should include, but not be limited to:

- i. an indicative development plan;**
- ii. an inventory of all facilities;**
- iii. an assessment of the relationships between facilities and public use;**
- iv. an assessment of ways to minimise noise generated by ski field facilities;**
- v. the identification of areas of high natural value and details of how they will be protected;**
- vi. the identification of the visually important components of the area which would need to be considered in landscape design;**
- vii. a contingency plan in the event of a fuel spill;**
- viii. an outline of restoration planting of local native species where appropriate;**
- ix. the identification of methods to minimise kea disturbance; and**
- x. the identification of natural, historic and recreational interpretation opportunities to be provided by the concessionaire, or jointly developed with the Department.**

2. An annual summer work programme (including clean-up) should be prepared by the concessionaire and provided to the Department for approval.

3. The concessionaire will be required to prepare and have audited by a suitably qualified person, a safety plan for all aspects of hazard management, public safety and associated environmental impacts within the concession area.

4. The Department will undertake regular monitoring of ski field operations and work programmes, seeking compliance with concession conditions and safety and environmental standards.
5. The functioning and efficiency of the Temple Basin sewerage system should comply with best practice in mitigating the environmental effects of sewage discharge in a sensitive alpine environment. In particular, any indication of contamination of Twin Stream should trigger an inspection and audit of the sewerage system.
6. While the goods lift may be upgraded its use should be restricted to the carriage of goods only. For the avoidance of doubt the development of gondola transport to the ski field should be opposed to avoid further impact on the natural environment from the increased numbers which could be expected to use such a service.
7. The use of oil or diesel powered motors may be permitted for the Downhill Basin ski tow and facilities, where provision is made to avoid adverse impacts on Park values. Where there is any impact, such as unreasonable noise or diesel spillage, immediate action will be taken to remedy this (see Method 7.2.12(a) 1 above).
8. Motor vehicles should not be permitted to use the track beyond the Temple Basin carpark beside State Highway 73, in accordance with 6.3.6 Roads, Parking Areas and Vehicles.

7.2.12(b)

1. Any application for snowmaking should require a full environmental impact assessment sufficient for both the Department's approval processes and for the Canterbury Regional Council's resource consent processes under the Resource Management Act.
2. Any applications for terrain modification should be accompanied by a suitable environmental impact assessment and should be limited to handwork methods along tow lines and access tracks.
3. Any applications for developments as in Policy 7.2.12(b) or Methods 7.2.12(b) 1 and 2 above should include an assessment of the implications of any climate change on the future reliability of natural snow fall.

7.2.13 Otira and Arthur's Pass Villages and Bealey Spur Settlement

Policies

7.2.13(a)

To seek a complementary relationship between the Park and its adjoining villages and the Bealey Spur settlement that recognises both the Park's values and the village and settlement functions.

7.2.13(b)

To provide and maintain Park management facilities, including staff accommodation, within Arthur's Pass village.

7.2.13(c)

To establish and maintain effective working relationships with the village and settlement communities who are interested in:

- i. the preservation and protection of natural, historic and landscape/scenic values within the Park; and/or**
- ii. the public use and cultural values of the Park.**

Explanation

7.2.13(a) & (b) - The villages and the Bealey Spur settlement as a whole are not within the Park, although the Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre, its adjoining carpark and most of the Department's staff accommodation and workshop complex are both in the Park and in Arthur's Pass village. There are significant interactions between the villages, the settlement and the Park. Arthur's Pass village is recognised within the *Selwyn District Plan* as having "an important role as a 'front door' to the National Park."; it is also the main accommodation base for the Park.

Significant common interests and interactions include:

- fire risk and control, particularly for the drier Bealey Spur where vegetation growth (fire fuel) is increasing (see 6.2.8 Fire Control);
- road access and car parking at Bealey Spur, for public use of the Park;
- actions to protect kea and minimise damage to facilities and vehicles;
- water supply catchments and the Otira take point within the Park for the two villages (see 7.2.8 Catchment Management);
- the provision of public toilets for State Highway 73 travellers and day visitors to Arthur's Pass and the Park;
- Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre use and public recreational facilities within or linking into the Arthur's Pass village (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities, 6.3.4 Information and Interpretation and 7.2.6 Public Access, Use and Facilities);
- Arthur's Pass sewage treatment and disposal and non-contamination of the Bealey River (see 7.2.8 Catchment Management);
- use and legalisation of the formed road access through the Park to freehold lands south of Rough Creek;
- telecommunication and power facility services (see 6.4.13 Telecommunications and 7.2.11 Power Transmission);

- community and rural fire fighting services, using Department and Selwyn and Westland District Council equipment;
- protection works within the Bealey riverbed for the Arthur's Pass village, including the railway (see 7.2.8 Catchment Management and 7.2.10 Midland Railway);
- Midland Railway operations, especially in their close association with other activities in Arthur's Pass village (see 7.2.10 Midland Railway);
- State Highway operations (see 7.2.9 State Highway 73); and
- Selwyn and Westland District Plan and Canterbury and West Coast Regional Plan zoning and other development controls, where activities within the villages and settlement may have adverse effects on the Park.

For Resource Management Act matters within the villages and the settlement, where there would be no significant adverse effects on the Park, including the Visitor Centre and other Department facilities, then the Department's involvement would be limited to matters affecting the welfare of its staff living and working within the area.

7.2.13(c) - There is a strong sense of community within the bach and home owners and others in the Bealey Spur and Arthur's Pass area, as reflected in the well-established Arthur's Pass Association. They take an active interest in the Park. Otira once had a thriving community in the days of electric trains through the Otira tunnel, but while much reduced today the community still has an interest in the Park.

Significant relationships between the community and the Department have developed around:

- public facility provisions within the Park (see 6.3.3 Public Facilities);
- past part-funding of the Arthur's Pass Visitor Centre;
- the development of a stoat trapping operation to protect roroa/great spotted kiwi (see 6.2.5 Introduced Animals and 7.2.2 Indigenous Plants and Animals);
- introduced plant control in and around all three settlements;
- the Park's 75th anniversary celebrations in 2004;
- Arthur's Pass village development (see 7.2.13(a) above);
- allowing the removal of gravel from the Bealey riverbed for domestic purposes (see 6.4.10 Stone and Gravel Removal);
- domestic animal control to avoid predation on roroa/great spotted kiwi (see 7.2.5 Introduced Plants and Animals);
- controlling and avoiding the introduction of potential plant pest species (see 7.2.5 Introduced Plants and Animals); and
- the involvement of Department staff as part of the community.

Methods

7.2.13(a), (b) & (c)

In addition to the relevant methods set out in the policy sections cross-referenced in the above explanations, the following methods apply:

- 1. Continue to work with the Selwyn and Westland District Councils and Canterbury and West Coast Regional Councils through the following processes:**
 - i. district and regional council annual planning;**
 - ii. statutory actions through the Resource Management Act; and**
 - iii. joint action for public facilities where there is a clear need for them by the public using the Park.**
- 2. Continue to involve, and be involved in, the communities of Arthur's Pass, Otira and Bealey Spur, with respect to the management of the Park.**

7.2.14 Corridor Outcomes

For the Otira & Rolleston Valleys:

- 1. the slopes of the Otira Valley turn red in summer when southern rata blooms. Rata flowers and the flowers and fruit of other species including Hall's totara, mountain five-finger and fuchsia provide a rich source of food for the abundant native bird and insect life;**
- 2. State Highway 73 and the Midland Railway, although not on National Park land, are managed in accordance with high standards, in recognition of their location through and as a frontage to the Park; and**
- 3. the Otira River geothermal spring is preserved, and human-induced adverse effects on it are avoided.**

For the Bealey & Waimakariri Valleys:

- 4. the Leonard Cockayne transects are preserved and periodically re-surveyed and the Arthur's Pass summit moraine is preserved, and human-induced adverse effects on them both are avoided;**
- 5. Arthur's Pass village continues to be managed as a well-presented 'front door' to the Park;**
- 6. Arthur's Pass village has a combination of voluntary and statutory controls to keep cats and dogs under tight control and the village clear of introduced plants that could spread into the Park; and**
- 7. State Highway 73 and the Midland Railway, although not on National Park land, are managed in accordance with high standards, in recognition of their location through and as a frontage to the Park.**

For the Otira, Rolleston, Bealey & Waimakariri Valleys:

- 8. the substantial assemblage of Māori and European historic sites and features along and associated with the Arthur's Pass route, from the former Bealey Hotel to Aickens, is recorded, researched, interpreted to visitors at chosen sites and preserved as far as possible;**
- 9. key historic sites and buildings are actively managed at the Old Coach Road, Jack's Hut and the Dobson Memorial and Centennial Cairn on the Arthur's Pass summit; and**
- 10. approvals given for any SH 73, Midland Railway or other utility or concession activity have included specific conditions to honour the historic features and landscape and preferably to avoid, but failing that to remedy or mitigate, any adverse effects on the features and landscape.**

Appendix A

THE ARTHUR'S PASS NATIONAL PARK BYLAWS 1981

Pursuant to section 56 of the National Parks Act 1980, the Minister of Lands hereby makes the following bylaws.

Contents

- 1 Title and commencement
- 2 Interpretation
- 3 Pollution of parks
- 4 Disposal of refuse
- 5 Camping
- 5A Conditions on access to certain places
- 6 Use of park huts
- 7 Use of cableway
- 8 Fires
- 9 Vehicles
- 10 Parking of vehicles
- 11 Aircraft
- 12 Competitive sports
- 13 Use of spotlight for hunting prohibited
- 14 Portable generators
- 15 Public address systems
- 16 Offences
- 17 Penalties
- 18 Proceedings under Acts in respect of offences

Bylaws

1 Title and Commencement

- (1) These bylaws may be cited as the Arthur's Pass National Park Bylaws 1981.
- (2) These bylaws shall come into force on the 1st day of April 1981.

2 Interpretation

In these bylaws, unless the context otherwise requires,--

"The Act" means the National Parks Act 1980:

"Aerodrome" means an aerodrome licensed under the Civil Aviation Regulations 1953; and includes any place which is within the park and which is authorised under those regulations for use as an aerodrome:

"Camp" includes staying overnight in any vehicle or boat:

"Camping site" means any area that has been appropriated as a camping site under section 49(1)(d) of the Act or under section 28(1)(i) of the National Parks Act 1952:

"Hut" means a hut, hostel, or other building owned by the Department and available for public accommodation in the park:

"Hut warden" means an officer or employee of the Department bearing a written authorisation from the Commissioner empowering him to supervise the activities relating to any hut or huts in the park:

"Official notice" means a conspicuous notice publicly displayed containing instructions or directions as to conduct in the park:

"Park" means the Arthur's Pass National Park:

"Road" includes all tracks formed for the use of vehicles and all bridges, culverts, and fords forming part of any road.

Other expressions defined in the Act have the meanings so defined.

3 Pollution of Parks

No person shall-

- (a) Wilfully or carelessly pollute in any manner the waters of the park; or
- (b) Wilfully or carelessly spill or cause to be spilled any petrol, oil, or similar substance in the park.

4 Disposal of Refuse

No person shall-

- (a) Leave any object or substance introduced into the park by him, or introduced into the park and in his possession, in any part of the park other than in a suitable litter receptacle provided in the park; or
- (b) Bury any refuse in the park.

5 Camping

- (1) No person shall, without the prior permission of a ranger or officer or employee of the Department, camp in the park within 200 metres of a formed road.
- (2) Every person who camps on a camping site in the park shall observe any direction--
 - (a) Which is -
 - (i) Given to him by a ranger or officer or employee of the Department; or
 - (ii) Brought to his attention by an official notice; and
 - (b) Which relates to the part or parts of the camping site that may be used for camping (including a direction that prohibits camping on any part or parts of the camping site).

- (3) Every person who camps in the park, whether on a camping site or otherwise, shall leave the area on which he camps clean and tidy after use.
- (4) No person shall camp in the park for more than 14 consecutive days without the consent of a ranger or officer of the Department.

5A. Conditions on Access to Certain Places- [Inserted by Amendment No. 1 in 1996]

- (1) Any person may have access to--
 - (a) The area within 100 metres radius of any hut:
 - (b) Any emergency shelter-- subject to the conditions in subclause (2) of this bylaw.
- (2) No person shall camp in any place or part of any place listed in subclause (1) of this bylaw unless--
 - (a) That place or that part of the place is a camping site; or
 - (b) That place is an emergency shelter and that person is camping in that shelter in an emergency.

6 Use of Park Huts

- (1) Except in an emergency, no person shall use any one hut for more than 5 successive nights without the prior consent of a ranger or officer or employee of the Department.
- (2) Every person who uses a hut shall leave it in a clean and tidy condition after use.
- (3) No person shall remain in any hut after he has been directed to leave by a ranger or hut warden on the grounds that he has acted in a manner likely to offend or annoy other people, or has damaged or appears likely to cause damage to a hut.
- (4) No person shall cause or allow any dog for which he is responsible to enter or be under any hut.

7 Use of Cableway

- (1) No person shall travel on any cableway that is, by official notice at that cableway, restricted to the carriage of goods.
- (2) No person shall enter the cage of any cableway on which any other person is travelling or about to travel.
- (3) No person shall operate any cableway other than in accordance with the instructions for use given by official notice at the cableway.
- (4) No person shall alter the mechanism of any cableway or attempt to repair or remedy any defect in the cableway.

8 Fires

- (1) No person shall light within the park any fire (other than a fire fuelled by gas or vaporised petrol, oil, or similar substance) within 200 metres of any formed road unless the fire is in a camping site or in a permanently constructed fireplace.

- (2) No person shall light a fire within the park in circumstances where it is likely to present a fire hazard.
- (3) No person shall light a fire within the park (except in a permanently constructed fireplace) within 3 metres of any tree or dry vegetation.
- (4) Every person who lights a fire within the park shall keep that fire continuously under supervision until it is completely extinguished.
- (5) No person shall drop, throw, or otherwise place in any combustible material any match, lighted cigarette, or other lighted matter, except for the purpose of lighting a fire as permitted by these bylaws.
- (6) Nothing in this bylaw shall exempt any person from the requirement to obtain an authority or permit to light a fire in the open air within the park pursuant to sections 23 and 24 of the Forest and Rural Fires Act 1977 or any other requirement of that Act and any regulations made or fire control measures taken under the authority of that Act.

9 Vehicles

- (1) Except in an emergency or where the Commissioner¹ considers it necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the park, no person shall drive a vehicle or permit a vehicle under his control to remain in any part of the park that is not a formed road or camping site, or has not been appropriated as a parking place under the Act.
- (2) No person shall drive a vehicle on a formed road (not being a public road) within the park--
 - (a) If the vehicle is of a class excluded by an official notice from that formed road; or
 - (b) If the vehicle is not currently registered or does not display a current warrant of fitness; or
 - (c) If the driver does not hold a current driver's licence for the particular class of vehicle being driven.
- (3) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any person who is operating a vehicle in accordance with an express authorisation in any lease or licence granted under any of sections 49 to 51 of the Act or any easement granted under section 54² of the Act.

10 Parking of Vehicles

The driver of any vehicle shall ensure--

- (a) That it is parked in accordance with the directions of any ranger or officer or employee of the Department, or the directions contained in any official notice; or
- (b) Where no such directions are given, that it is parked in a safe and considerate manner and position.

¹ Now the Director-General of Conservation, by section 65(8) Conservation Act 1987.

² Section 54 was repealed by the National Parks Amendment Act 1996.

11 Aircraft

- (1) Except in an emergency or where authorised by a licence or permit issued under the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 or where the Commissioner³ considers it necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the park--
 - (a) No person shall land an aircraft at or take off from any place within the park that is not an aerodrome:
 - (b) No person shall hover an aircraft over any part of the park.
- (2) The pilot in command of an aircraft which flies in contravention of, or fails to comply with, subclause (1) of this bylaw commits an offence against these bylaws.
- (3) The Commissioner may, by official notice, prohibit persons from entering any part of the park that is likely to be affected by the landing or taking off of aircraft within the park for such a period of time as he considers necessary for the safety of the public.
- (4) Every person commits an offence against these bylaws who wilfully enters or wilfully remains on any part of the park at a time when entry to that part of the park is prohibited by an official notice under subclause (3) of this bylaw.
- (5) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any person who is operating an aircraft in accordance with an express authorisation in any lease or licence granted under any of sections 49 to 51 of the Act or any easement granted under section 54⁴ of the Act.

12 Competitive Sports

- (1) No person shall, without the prior written consent of a ranger or officer or employee of the Department, conduct or engage in any competitive sport or in any organised training for any competitive sport in the park.
- (2) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any activity carried out on any land that is being administered under the Tourist and Health Resorts Control Act 1908 or the Tourist Hotel Corporation Act 1974⁵.

13 Use of Spotlight for Hunting Prohibited

No person shall use a spotlight within the park for the purpose of identifying or dazzling prey.

14 Portable Generators

- (1) Except in an emergency or where the Commissioner considers it is necessary for the proper and beneficial management, administration, and control of the park, no person shall install or operate a portable electric generator in any part of the park.
- (2) Nothing in this bylaw shall apply to any activity carried out on any land that is being administered under the Tourist and Health Resorts Control Act 1908 or the Tourist Hotel Corporation Act 1974.

³ Now the Director-General of Conservation, by section 65(8) Conservation Act 1987.

⁴ Section 54 was repealed by the National Parks Amendment Act 1996.

⁵ Bylaw clauses 12(2) and 14(2) have no effect as lands of this type were never in Arthur's Pass National Park.

15 Public Address Systems

- (1) No person shall install or operate any public address system in the park unless that system--
- (a) Is installed in a building or vehicle; and
 - (b) Cannot be heard outside that building or vehicle.
- (2) Nothing in this bylaw shall prevent the installation or operation of a public address system in the park for the purpose of making announcements relating to the safety of the public.

16 Offences--

Every person commits an offence against these bylaws who acts in contravention of or fails to comply in any respect with any of the provisions of these bylaws.

17 Penalties

Every person who commits an offence against these bylaws is liable on summary conviction--

- (a) In the case of an offence against bylaw 11(2) of these bylaws, to a fine not exceeding \$5,000;
- (b) In the case of any other offence against these bylaws, to a fine not exceeding \$500.

18 Proceedings Under Acts In Respect Of Offences

Nothing in these bylaws shall limit or prevent the taking of proceedings under any Act in respect of any offence committed within the park.

Issued under the authority of the Regulations Act 1936.

Date of notification in Gazette: 20 March 1981.

ARTHUR'S PASS NATIONAL PARK BYLAWS 1981, AMENDMENT

This inserted bylaw 5A into the principal bylaws.

Date of notification in Gazette: 5 December 1996.

Appendix B

PROTOCOLS ON THE DEPARTMENT OF CONSERVATION'S INTERACTION WITH NGĀI TAHU ON SPECIFIED ISSUES

(Clause 12.12, *Deed of Settlement*, 1997)

NOTIFICATION OF THE ISSUE OF PROTOCOLS

Under section 282 (4) of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 the Minister of Conservation hereby notifies that she has issued Protocols on behalf of the Crown regarding the Department of Conservation's interaction with Ngāi Tahu on specified issues, and that the Protocols as set out in the Schedule hereto were issued on 22 October 1998.

Schedule

1 INTRODUCTION

1.1 The purpose of the Conservation Act 1987 is to manage natural and historic resources under that Act and the Acts in the First Schedule of the Conservation Act. Section 4 of the Conservation Act requires that the Act be so interpreted and administered as to give effect to the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

1.2 The Director-General has certain management responsibilities in terms of legislation and can only delegate or share responsibility for decisions s/he makes within the limits of his/her legislation. However, in making such decisions, the Director-General will provide Te Rūnanga the opportunity for input, consistent with section 4, in its policy, planning and decision-making processes on the matters set out in these Protocols.

1.3 These Protocols apply across the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā, which spans five conservancies, and the Southern and Central Regional Offices of the Department.

1.4 Both the Department and Te Rūnanga are seeking a relationship consistent with the Treaty principle of partnership that achieves over time the conservation policies, actions and outcomes sought by both Te Rūnanga and the Department, as set out in this document.

2 PURPOSE OF PROTOCOLS

2.1 These Protocols are issued pursuant to the Settlement Legislation and section 12.12 of the 1997 Deed of Settlement between the Crown and Ngāi Tahu, which specifies the following:

2.1.1 Definitions

Protocol means a statement in writing, issued by the Crown through the Minister of Conservation to Te Rūnanga, which sets out how the Department of Conservation will exercise its functions, powers and duties in relation to specified matters within the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area, and how the Department of Conservation will, on a continuing basis, interact with Te Rūnanga and provide for Te Rūnanga's input into its decision-making process.

2.1.2 Authority to Issue, Amend or Cancel Protocols

The Minister of Conservation has the power to issue, amend and cancel Protocols.

2.1.3 Issue of Protocols

On the Settlement Date (as defined in the Settlement Legislation) the Crown has agreed through the Minister of Conservation to issue Protocols in this form on the following matters:

- (a) cultural materials;
- (b) freshwater fisheries;
- (c) culling of species of interest to Ngāi Tahu;
- (d) historic resources;
- (e) Resource Management Act 1991 involvement; and
- (f) visitor and public information.

2.1.4 Protocols subject to Crown Obligations

The Protocols shall be issued and amended subject to, and without restriction upon, the obligations of the Minister and the Department of Conservation to discharge their respective functions, powers and duties in accordance with existing law and government policy from time to time and the Crown's powers to amend policy and introduce legislation amending existing law. This clause is not intended to indicate, and should not be interpreted as indicating, any agreement by Te Rūnanga to any amendment to policy which would adversely affect the redress provided by the Crown pursuant to the Settlement Deed or the ability of either party to fulfil its obligations expressed in the Settlement Deed.

2.1.5 Noting of Protocols on CMS

- (a) The existence of the Protocols, once issued, and as amended from time to time, and including a definition of the Protocols as set out above and a summary of the terms of issue of the Protocols, shall be noted in conservation management strategies, conservation management plans and national park management plans from time to time affecting the Ngāi Tahu Claim Area.
- (b) Such noting of the Protocols shall be for the purpose of public notice only and shall not be amendments to the relevant strategies or plans for the purposes of section 171 of the Conservation Act 1987 or section 46 of the National Parks Act 1980.

2.1.6 Enforceability of Protocols

- (a) Subject to the Crown's right to amend or cancel the Protocols, as set out in clause 10.1, the Minister of Conservation must comply with the Protocols as long as they remain in force.

- (b) If the Minister of Conservation fails unreasonably to comply with the Protocols Te Rūnanga may, subject to the Crown Proceedings Act 1950, enforce the Protocols by way of public law action against the Minister of Conservation, except that damages shall not be available as a remedy.
- (c) Any guidelines which are to be developed pursuant to the Protocols will not give rise to any enforceable obligations under the Protocols.

2.1.7 Limitation of Rights

Pursuant to section 286 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998, unless expressly provided in the Settlement Deed, the Settlement Legislation or in the Protocols, the Protocols will not of themselves have the effect of granting, creating or providing evidence of any estate or interest in, or any rights of any kind whatsoever relating to, land held, managed or administered under the Conservation Act 1987 or the statutes listed in the First Schedule to that Act.

3 IMPLEMENTATION AND COMMUNICATION

3.1 The Department will seek to establish and maintain communication with Te Rūnanga and its Papatipu Rūnanga on a continuing basis by:

- (a) maintaining at the conservancy level, with the assistance of Te Rūnanga, information provided on Papatipu Rūnanga, their office holders and addresses;
- (b) providing reasonable opportunities for Te Rūnanga and Papatipu Rūnanga to meet with Department managers and staff.

3.2 The Protocols provide for ongoing implementation of a range of matters, as well as Specific Projects which will require resourcing. It is not intended that all of the Specific Projects listed in these Protocols will be implemented in any one year. Implementation will be over time. Where these Protocols refer to Specific Projects that require resourcing, their implementation will be subject to provision being made in the relevant conservancy business plan. The process for the Department implementing any particular Specific Project in a business year will be as follows:

- The Department will meet with Te Rūnanga in each conservancy and at regional level annually to identify priorities for undertaking Specific Projects as listed in these protocols for the upcoming business year.
- The identified priorities will be taken forward by the Department into its business planning process at the conservancy and regional levels and considered along with other priorities.
- The decision on whether any Specific Projects will be funded in any business year will be made by the Conservator and the Regional General Manager.
- The Department will advise Te Rūnanga of the outcome of this process.
- Te Rūnanga and the Department will then meet again, if required, to finalise a work plan for implementation of the Specific Projects in that business year, in accordance with the resources which have been allocated in the business plan. The Department will apply the allocated resources to give effect to that work plan, subject to unforeseen management requirements which may arise from time to time, such as emergencies,

adverse weather, staff shortages or reallocation of resources directed by the Minister.

3.3 The Department will:

- (a) Meet with Te Rūnanga to review implementation of these Protocols and to deal with the matters in section 3.2 four times per annum, unless otherwise agreed, in each conservancy, twice per annum at regional level, and at least once per annum at Chief Executive level;
- (b) As far as reasonably practicable, train relevant staff on these Protocols and provide ongoing training as required;
- (c) As far as reasonably practicable, brief Conservation Board and NZCA members on these Protocols and the Ngāi Tahu Settlement, and provide ongoing information as required.

4 CULTURAL MATERIALS

4.1 For the purpose of these Protocols, cultural materials are defined as:

- (i) plants, plant materials;
- (ii) materials derived from animals, marine mammals or birds to the extent to which the Department holds and is responsible for them, and which are important to Ngāi Tahu in maintaining their culture.

4.2 Current legislation means that generally some form of concession or permit is required for any gathering of cultural materials.

4.3 The Department will:

- (a) Have particular regard to Te Rūnanga's cultural use policy (Kawa Hua Taiao) as it relates to the Department's activities, and other relevant Te Rūnanga statements of policy produced from time to time.
- (b) Consider requests from members of Ngāi Tahu Whānui for the customary use of cultural materials in accordance with the appropriate legislation.
- (c) Agree, where reasonably practicable, for Ngāi Tahu to have access to cultural materials which become available as a result of Departmental operations such as track maintenance or clearance or culling of species.
- (d) Consult with Te Rūnanga in circumstances where there are competing requests from non-Ngāi Tahu persons or entities for the use of cultural materials, for example for scientific research purposes, to see if the cultural and scientific or other needs can be reconciled before the Department makes a decision in respect of those requests.

4.4 Specific projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

- (a) Develop and implement guidelines for each conservancy within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā that help define levels of customary use of cultural materials, and set conditions, after consideration of tikanga, to be met for gathering.

- (b) Identify local sources of plants and provide advice to Te Rūnanga with respect to the establishment by Te Rūnanga of cultivation sites.
- (c) Establish Departmental cultural materials banks for cultural materials which have come into the Department's possession, and guidelines for their use.

5 FRESHWATER FISHERIES

5.1 The Department has a statutory role in advocating the conservation of aquatic life and freshwater fisheries generally. Its advocacy for freshwater biota, aquatic habitats and fish passage in all areas is primarily taken via statutory planning processes provided by the Resource Management Act 1991.

5.2 The Settlement Legislation provides the power to promulgate regulations with respect to customary freshwater fisheries in the South Island administered under the Conservation Act 1987, with such regulations to be promulgated as soon as practicable, and in any event within two years of the Settlement Date. Besides generally consulting with Te Rūnanga and providing for its participation in the conservation and management of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats, the Department will consult and have particular regard to the advice of Te Rūnanga as an Advisory Committee appointed under section 56 of the Conservation Act on all matters concerning the management and conservation by the Department of Conservation of Taonga Fish Species (as defined in the Settlement Legislation) within the Ngāi Tahu Takiwā.

5.3 Advisory Committee

The Department will, in relation to the Taonga Fish Species and as far as reasonably practicable, provide the Advisory Committee with all relevant information to enable it to give informed advice, and will meet with the Advisory Committee at conservancy level as necessary to give effect to the Deed of Settlement and Settlement Legislation.

5.4 Customary freshwater fisheries regulations

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

- (a) Provide for Te Rūnanga participation in the development and promulgation of customary freshwater fishing regulations by:
 - Establishing a joint working group;
 - Setting terms of reference for that working group;
 - Setting timelines for progress;
 - Providing information to Te Rūnanga in a timely manner and allowing Te Rūnanga an opportunity to comment.

5.5 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

- (a) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to the promotion of compliance with customary freshwater fisheries regulations.

- (b) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to monitoring the efficacy of the customary freshwater fisheries regulations at regular intervals.
- (c) Develop and implement guidelines for the Department with respect to sharing accumulated management information and research data on customary freshwater fisheries with Te Rūnanga.

5.6 Other matters

The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to provide for active participation by Te Rūnanga in the conservation, management and research of customary freshwater fisheries and freshwater fish habitats by:

- (a) Seeking to identify areas for co-operation in advocacy, consistent with 9 below, focusing on fish passage, minimum flows, protection of riparian vegetation and habitats, water quality improvement and in the restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of customary freshwater fisheries and their freshwater habitats.
- (b) Consulting with Te Rūnanga in developing or contributing to research programmes that aim to improve the understanding of the biology of customary freshwater fisheries and their environmental and habitat requirements. The Department confirms that it regards Te Rūnanga as a possible science provider or collaborator for research projects funded or promoted by the Department in the same manner as other potential providers or collaborators.

5.7 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga to:

- (a) Conduct research to establish and address ecosystem threats to specified customary freshwater fisheries including barriers to migration, habitat loss and exotic species interaction.
- (b) Contribute to the resolution of eel management issues, in particular, the administration of the fish passage regulations in the Freshwater Fisheries Regulations, and the promotion of the installation of effective fish passes where necessary and monitoring of their effects, by participating in discussions with Te Rūnanga and Te Waka a Māui me ona Toka Mahi Tuna.
- (c) Identify the need for, and where necessary prepare, management plans for freshwater fisheries management.

6 CULLING OF SPECIES OF INTEREST TO NGĀI TAHU

6.1 As part of an integrated management regime, or because a species population has risen to become an ecological pest, it may from time to time be necessary for the Department to carry out a cull of a protected species under the Wildlife Act 1953. The Department recognises that Te Rūnanga is interested in such operations in the following ways:

- (i) the carrying out of such a cull where the species to be culled is causing or is likely to cause ecological damage to species or habitats of particular significance to Ngāi Tahu;
- (ii) the methods to be used in such culls; and
- (iii) cultural materials arising from the cull.

6.2 The Department will:

- (a) Have regard to any requests initiated by Te Rūnanga for the carrying out of culling operations.
- (b) Consult with, and have particular regard to the views of, Te Rūnanga before deciding to carry out a cull of protected species on land administered by the Department, in respect of the reasons for the cull and the method proposed to be used.
- (c) In situations where either a Fish and Game Council or a Regional Council intend to carry out a cull of protected species or game birds and the Department has a statutory role in the process, request the relevant body to consult with Te Rūnanga before carrying out any such cull.

7 HISTORIC RESOURCES

7.1 The Minister acknowledges the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them. Liaison with Te Rūnanga is important in the management of those places containing sites of historic and cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu, including places of settlement, horticulture, natural resource harvesting, warfare, communication, and places of cultural and spiritual connection.

7.2 The Department notes that non-disclosure of locations of places known to Ngāi Tahu is a practice used by Ngāi Tahu to preserve the sanctity of a place. Respecting the principle of confidentiality brings management difficulties of a particular kind. Where information is not available, management practices which (unintentionally) contravene the cultural purpose associated with a specific site, may be put in place. Where reasonably practicable, the Department will respect the principle of confidentiality that applies to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu. The primary responsibility for identifying and assessing Ngāi Tahu heritage values rests with Te Rūnanga.

7.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at Regional and conservancy levels to:

- (a) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that Ngāi Tahu values attaching to identified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department are respected by the Department, for example, by the Department giving consideration to impacts from visitor numbers, facilities and services.
- (b) Manage, as far as reasonably practicable, wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993.

- (c) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that when issuing concessions giving authority for other parties to manage land administered by the Department, those parties manage the land according to the standards of conservation practice outlined in the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter 1993.
- (d) Have particular regard to relevant Te Rūnanga policies, including those relating to Koiwi Tangata (unidentified human remains) and Archaeological and Rock Art Sites.
- (e) Ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that it uses Ngāi Tahu's cultural information only with the consent of Te Rūnanga.
- (f) When issuing concessions to carry out activities on the land administered by the Department, request that the concessionaire consult with Te Rūnanga before using Ngāi Tahu's cultural information.

7.4 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to:

- (a) Develop and implement guidelines for the identification, inventory and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu by the Department that take into consideration the traditional uses and practices of Ngāi Tahu and are, where reasonably practicable, consistent with Ngāi Tahu tikanga.
- (b) Identify and actively protect specified wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga or other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu on land administered by the Department.
- (c) Develop and implement guidelines for the active protection of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu.
- (d) Identify co-operative projects covering a range of options for the protection and management of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to Ngāi Tahu.
- (e) Develop and implement guidelines relating to the use of Ngāi Tahu's knowledge of wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance of Ngāi Tahu, including the use of this information by the Department.
- (f) Consult with and seek participation from Te Rūnanga with respect to research, survey or inventory projects that relate specifically to wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic significance to them.

8 VISITOR AND PUBLIC INFORMATION

8.1 In providing public information and interpretation services and facilities for visitors on the land it manages, the Department recognises the importance to Ngāi Tahu of their cultural, spiritual, traditional and historic values.

8.2 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to encourage respect for Ngāi Tahu values by:

- (a) As far as reasonably practicable seeking to raise public awareness of positive conservation partnerships developed between Te Rūnanga, the Department and other stakeholders, for example, by way of publications, presentations and seminars.

- (b) Consulting on the provisions of interpretation and visitor facilities (if any) at wāhi tapu, wāhi taonga and other places of historic or cultural significance to Ngāi Tahu.
- (c) Ensuring, as far as reasonably practicable, that Department information on new panels, signs, and visitor publications includes Te Rūnanga perspectives and references to the significance of the sites to Ngāi Tahu where appropriate, including the use of traditional Ngāi Tahu place names.
- (d) Encouraging Te Rūnanga participation in the Department's volunteer and conservation events programmes.

8.3 Specific Projects

The Department will, subject to 3.2 above, work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to:

- (a) Develop and implement guidelines on the provision of information and interpretation facilities and services for visitors, so as to identify and consider issues of concern to Te Rūnanga.
- (b) Consider possibilities for Te Rūnanga to contribute to visitor appreciation of the cultural value of sites of cultural and historic significance to Ngāi Tahu managed by the Department.
- (c) Provide information to education providers, including kohanga reo and kura kaupapa Māori, for the development of educational resources on conservation issues and associated Ngāi Tahu values.

9 RESOURCE MANAGEMENT ACT 1991

9.1 Te Rūnanga and the Department both have concerns with the effects of activities controlled and managed under the Resource Management Act. These include effects on:

- wetlands;
- riparian management;
- freshwater fish habitat;
- water quality management;
- protection of historic resources;
- protection of indigenous vegetation and habitats.

9.2 From time to time, Te Rūnanga and the Department will seek to identify further issues of mutual interest for discussion. It is recognised that their concerns in any particular resource management issue may diverge and that each of them will continue to make separate submissions.

9.3 The Department will work with Te Rūnanga at regional and conservancy levels to discuss the general approach that will be taken by each of Te Rūnanga and the Department in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act, and seek to identify their respective priorities and issues of mutual concern.

9.4 The Department will;

- (a) Have regard to the priorities and issues of mutual concern identified in 9.3(a) above in making decisions in respect of advocacy under the Resource Management Act.
- (b) Make non-confidential resource information available to Te Rūnanga to assist in improving their effectiveness in Resource Management Act advocacy work at the Papatipu Rūnanga level.

10 AMENDMENT AND REVIEW PROVISIONS FROM THE DEED

10.1 Amendment and Cancellation of Protocols

Pursuant to section 282 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998:

Protocols may be amended or cancelled by the Minister of Conservation, from time to time at the initiative of either the Crown or Te Rūnanga;

The Minister of Conservation may amend or cancel Protocols only after consulting Te Rūnanga and having regard to its views; and

As soon as reasonably practicable after the amendment, or cancellation of a Protocol, the Minister of Conservation must notify such amendment, or cancellation in the Gazette.

Dated at Wellington this 26 day of July 2001.

MATT ROBSON, for SANDRA LEE, Minister of Conservation.

(NZ Gazette 2001, page 2171)

Appendix C

TAONGA SPECIES

(Schedules 97 and 98 Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998)

Taonga bird species found in or near Arthur's Pass National Park

NAME IN MĀORI	NAME IN ENGLISH	SCIENTIFIC NAME
kāhu	Australasian harrier	<i>Circus approximans</i>
kākā	South Island kākā	<i>Nestor meridionalis meridionalis</i>
kākāriki karaka	orange-fronted parakeet	<i>Cyanoramphus</i> spp.
kākāriki	yellow- and red-crowned parakeet	<i>Cyanoramphus</i> spp.
kakaruai	South Island robin	<i>Petroica australis australis</i>
kāmana	crested grebe	<i>Podiceps cristatus</i>
kārearea	New Zealand falcon	<i>Falco novaeseelandiae</i>
karoro	black-backed gull	<i>Larus dominicanus</i>
kea	kea	<i>Nestor notabilis</i>
kōau	black shag	<i>Phalacrocorax carbo</i>
	pied shag	<i>Phalacrocorax varius varius</i>
	little shag	<i>Phalacrocorax melanoleucos brevirostris</i>
koekoeā	long-tailed cuckoo	<i>Eudynamis taitensis</i>
kōparapara or korimako	bellbird	<i>Anthornis melanura melanura</i>
kōtare	kingfisher	<i>Halcyon sancta</i>
kōtuku	white heron	<i>Egretta alba</i>
kūkupa/kererū	New Zealand wood pigeon	<i>Hemiphaga novaeseelandiae</i>
kururwhenga/kuruwhengi	New Zealand shoveller	<i>Anas rbynchotis</i>
miromiro	South Island tomtit	<i>Petroica macrocephala macrocephala</i>
mohua	yellowhead	<i>Moboua ocbrocephala</i>
pakura/pukeko	swamp hen / pūkeko	<i>Porphyrio porphyrio</i>
pāpera	grey duck	<i>Anas superciliosa</i>
pīhoihoi	New Zealand pipit	<i>Anthus novaeseelandiae</i>
pīpīwharauaroa	shining cuckoo	<i>Chrysococcyx lucidus</i>
pīwakawaka	South Island fantail	<i>Rhipidura fuliginosa fuliginosa</i>
poaka	pied stilt	<i>Himantopus himantopus</i>
pūtakitaki	paradise shelduck	<i>Tadorna variegata</i>
riroriro	grey warbler	<i>Gerygone igata</i>
roroa	great spotted kiwi	<i>Apteryx haastii</i>
ruru koukou	morepork	<i>Ninox novaeseelandiae</i>
tara	terns	<i>Sterna</i> spp.
tete	grey teal	<i>Anas gracilis</i>
tititipounamu	South Island rifleman	<i>Acantbisitta chloris chloris</i>
tui	tui	<i>Prosthemadera novaeseelandiae</i>
weka	western weka	<i>Gallirallus australis australis</i>
whio	blue duck	<i>Hymenolaimus malacorhynchus</i>

Taonga plant species found in or near Arthur's Pass National Park

NAME IN MĀORI	NAME IN ENGLISH	SCIENTIFIC NAME
akatorotoro	white rata	<i>Metrosideros perforata</i>
aruhe	fernroot (bracken)	<i>Pteridium aquilinum var. esculentum</i>
harakeke	flax	<i>Pbormium tenax</i>
horoeke	lancewood	<i>Pseudopanax crassifolius</i>
houhi	mountain ribbonwood	<i>Hoberia lyallii</i> and <i>H. glabata</i>
kahikatea	kahikatea/white pine	<i>Dacrycarpus dacrydioides</i>
kāmahi	kamahi	<i>Weinmannia racemosa</i>
kānuka	kanuka	<i>Kunzia ericoides</i>
kāpuka	broadleaf	<i>Griselinia littoralis</i>
karaoipirita	supplejack	<i>Ripogonum scandens</i>
karamu	coprosma	<i>Coprosma robusta</i> , <i>Coprosma lucida</i> , <i>Coprosma foetidissima</i>
kātote	tree fern	<i>Cyathea smithii</i>
kiekie	kiekie	<i>Freycinetia baueriana</i> subsp. <i>banksii</i>
kōhia	NZ passionfruit	<i>Passiflora tetrandra</i>
korokio	korokio / wire-netting bush	<i>Corokia cotoneaster</i>
koromiko / kōkōmuka	koromiko	<i>Hebe salicifolia</i>
kōtukutuku	tree fuchsia	<i>Fuchsia excorticata</i>
kōwhai / kōhai	kowhai	<i>Sophora microphylla</i>
mamaku	tree fern	<i>Cyathea medullaris</i>
mānia	sedge	<i>Carex flagellifera</i>
mānuka kahikātoa	tea-tree	<i>Leptospermum scoparium</i>
māpou	red matipo/Mapou	<i>Myrsine australis</i>
matai	matai/black pine	<i>Prumnopitys taxifolia</i>
miro	miro/brown pine	<i>Prumnopitys ferruginea</i>
pānako	(species of fern)	<i>Asplenium obtusatum</i> and <i>Botrychium bifforme</i>
pātōtara	dwarf mingimingi	<i>Leucopogon fraseri</i>
pōkākā	pokaka	<i>Elaeocarpus bookerianus</i>
ponga/poka	tree fern	<i>Cyathea dealbata</i>
rātā	southern rata	<i>Metrosideros umbellata</i>
raupo	bulrush	<i>Typba augustifolia</i>
rautāwhiri / kōhūhū	black matipo / mapou	<i>Pittosporum tenuifolium</i>
rimu	rimu / red pine	<i>Dacrydium cypressinum</i>
taramea	speargrass / spaniard	<i>Aciphylla</i> spp.
tarata	lemonwood	<i>Pittosporum eugenioides</i>
tawai	beech	<i>Nothofagus</i> spp.
tī rākau / tī kōuka	cabbage tree	<i>Cordyline australis</i>
tikumū	mountain daisy	<i>Celmisia spectabilis</i>
toatoa	mountain toatoa / celery pine	<i>Phyllocladus alpinus</i>
toetoe	toetoe	<i>Cortaderia richardii</i>
tōtara	totara	<i>Podocarpus totara</i>
tutu	tutu	<i>Coriaria</i> spp.
wharariki	mountain flax	<i>Pbormium cookianum</i>
whīnau	hinau	<i>Elaeocarpus dentatus</i>
wī	silver tussock	<i>Poa cita</i>
wīwī	rushes	<i>Juncus</i> all indigenous <i>Juncus</i> spp. and <i>J. maritimus</i>

Glossary

Accessory structures: any structure attached to a building or on an approved building site. Such structures would include television or other aerials/discs, flagpoles, fences, sheds, carports or garages, firewood shelters, hoists or lines of flags or other like structures.

Advocacy: the collective term for work done to promote conservation to the public and outside agencies by the Department of Conservation, conservation boards and the New Zealand Conservation Authority. Advocacy includes taking part in land use planning processes and using a range of methods to inform and educate the public and visitors on conservation issues.

Aircraft: any machine that can derive support in the atmosphere from the reactions of the air otherwise than by the reactions of the air against the surface of the earth. *Civil Aviation Act 1990*

Amenity area: a picnic area, viewpoint or road end that is not a campsite or carpark, likely to have a maintained grass area, and may have toilets, a shelter or other structures such as a viewing platform.

Animal: any mammal, bird, reptile, amphibian, fish (including shellfish) or related organism, insect, crustacean, or organism of every kind, but does not include a human being. *National Parks Act 1980*

Antiquity: as defined in the Antiquities Act 1975.

Ara hiko: in the sense that it is used in this Plan, a way or path.

Archaeological Site: in the context of the Park, is any place in New Zealand that was associated with human activity that occurred before 1900; and is or may be able through investigation by archaeological methods to provide evidence relating to the history of New Zealand. *Historic Places Act 1993*

Artefact/Artifact: any chattel, carving, object, or thing which relates to the history, art, culture, traditions, or economy of the Māori or other pre-European inhabitants of New Zealand and which was or appears to have been manufactured or modified in New Zealand by any such inhabitant, or brought to New Zealand by an ancestor of any such inhabitant, or used by any such inhabitant, prior to 1902. *Antiquities Act 1975*

Awa: rivers

CAA: Civil Aviation Authority of New Zealand.

Canterbury Aoraki Conservation Board: one of 14 conservation boards. Functions include overseeing the preparation of the *Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy (CMS)*, recommending approval of conservation management plans (CMP), advising the NZCA or Director-General of Conservation on conservation matters, advising on new walkways in the region and liaising with the Fish and Game Council.

Cockayne transects: a series of vegetation monitoring transects in the Arthur's Pass vicinity (see 2.3.1 Indigenous Species, Habitats and Ecosystems).

Concession: a lease, licence, permit or easement, granted under Part IIIB of the Conservation Act 1987 with reference to section 49 of the National Parks Act 1980, to enable the carrying out of a trade, occupation or business.

Concessionaire: the holder of a concession.

Conservancy: the Department of Conservation has 13 conservancy offices in different parts of the country. Each office and all the land it is responsible for is called a Conservancy.

Conservation: (1) Under the Historic Places Act 1993 it includes the processes of preserving, maintaining, and restoring historic places and historic areas so as to safeguard their historical and cultural values. (2) In the ICOMOS New Zealand Charter it means the process of caring for a place to safeguard its cultural heritage value. (3) Under the Conservation Act 1987 it means the preservation and protection of natural and historic resources for the purpose of maintaining their intrinsic values, providing for their appreciation and recreational enjoyment by the public, and safeguarding the options of future generations.

Conservation boards: Conservation boards are established under section 6L of the Conservation Act 1987. The primary functions and powers of conservation boards are set out in the Conservation Act 1987 and the National Parks Act 1980 (sections 6M and 6N, Conservation Act 1987 and section 30, National Parks Act 1980).

Conservation Management Strategy or CMS: a strategy which implements General Policies and establishes objectives for the integrated management of natural and historic resources and for recreation, tourism and other conservation purposes. The strategy is reviewed every 10 years.

Conservation Act 1987 s17D

Consultation: An invitation to give advice and consideration of that advice. To achieve consultation, sufficient information must be supplied and sufficient time allowed by the consulting party to those consulted to enable them to tender helpful advice. It involves an ongoing dialogue. It does not necessarily mean acceptance of the other party's view, but enables informed decision-making by having regard to those views.

Crowding (hut): The Department's service standard for backcountry huts states overcrowding as "more than 10% over the capacity of the hut. During the peak period, if hut capacity is exceeded by 10% over 10% of the season, management must take action to prevent this happening next season.

Department of Conservation

Department, the, DOC: the Department of Conservation.

District plan: this is prepared and changed by a territorial authority according to the requirements of the Resource Management Act 1991, for the purpose of sustainable management of natural and physical resources. District plans indicate what uses are permitted for land within the district.

Resource Management Act 1991

Ecology: the study of organisms in relation to one another and to their surroundings.

NZ Pocket Oxford Dictionary

Ecosystem: a biological system comprising a community of living organisms and its associated non-living environment, interacting as an ecological unit.

Effect: any positive or adverse effect; and any temporary or permanent effect; and any past, present or future effect; and any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect and also includes any potential effect of high probability; and any potential effect of low probability which has high potential impact. *Section 3, Resource Management Act 1991*

EIA: environmental impact assessment. An assessment undertaken to determine the potential effects of an activity on the Park's natural and historic values.

Endemic: a species which is native to, as well as restricted to, a particular area.

Facilities: Facilities that enable people to enjoy a range of recreational opportunities including (but not limited to): visitor and information centres, camping areas, tracks and walkways, bridges, huts, roads, car-parking areas, toilets, picnic areas, signs and interpretation panels, viewing platforms, wharves, and boat ramps. *General Policy for National Parks (2005)*

General Policy: for the purposes of this Plan refers to the *General Policy for National Parks (2005)*.

Great Walks: the Department's premier walking tracks, through areas of some of the best scenery in the country. The huts and tracks on the Great Walks are of a higher standard than on other tramping tracks, and many of the Great Walks have booking systems to manage visitor pressure.

Habitat: the environment within which a particular species or group of species lives. It includes the physical and biotic characteristics that are relevant to the species concerned.

Historic resource: an historic place within the meaning of the Historic Places Act 1993, and includes any interest in a historic resource.

Section 2, Conservation Act 1987

Hyporheic fauna: of or occupying the wetted zone within and alongside rivers.

ICOMOS: International Committee on Monuments and Sites.

Interpretation: conveying information about the origin, meaning or values of natural or cultural heritage via live, interactive or static media. It occurs in the vicinity of the subject and is designed to stimulate visitor interest, increase understanding and promote support for conservation.

Indigenous species: Refers to plants and animals that have established in New Zealand without the assistance of human beings and without the assistance of vehicles or aircraft. This includes species that are unique to New Zealand as well as those that may be found elsewhere in the world. Use of the words 'indigenous' and 'native' has the same meaning in this Plan.

Iwi: tribe, people. *Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*

Iwi Authority: the authority which represents an iwi and which is recognised by that iwi as having authority to do so (*Resource Management Act 1991*). The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 established the Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu as a body corporate with the authority to act on behalf of all Ngāi Tahu Whānui.

Kaitiaki: guardian.

Kiore: the introduced Polynesian/Māori rat.

Koiwi: Bones, skeletal remains.

Lease: a grant of interest in land that gives exclusive possession of that land and makes provision for any activity on the land that the lessee is permitted to carry out. *Conservation Act 1987*

Mana whenua: customary authority exercised by an iwi or hapu or individual in an identified area. *Conservation Act 1987*

Mahinga kai: customary gathering of food and natural materials and the places where those resources are gathered.

Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998

Management plan: in relation to any park, means a management plan prepared and approved for that park, in accordance with sections 45 to 48 of the National Parks Act 1980.

Mauri: essential life force, the spiritual power and distinctiveness that enables each thing to exist as itself.

Minister: Minister of Conservation or duly authorised delegate.

National park values: The values outlined in section 4 of the National Parks Act 1980.

Natural hazard: has the same meaning as it has in the Resource Management Act 1991.

Natural Resources: plants and animals, their habitats, landscapes, landforms, geological features, systems of interacting living organisms, and their environments. *Conservation Act 1987*

Ngāi Tahu: this term is used throughout this Plan to refer to all Ngāi Tahu individual persons, Ngāi Tahu whānau, Ngāi Tahu hapū, Ngāi Tahu whanui, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Papatipu Rūnanga.

New Zealand Conservation Authority: a national body of 13 appointed members established under section 6A of the Conservation Act 1987. Amongst other functions, it has the statutory responsibility for adopting General Policy for national parks, and approving conservation management strategies and plans and national park management plans.

Section 6B, Conservation Act 1987 and section 18, National Parks Act 1980

Nival: of or growing in or under snow.

Objectives: statements of intended results. These can be broad or narrow in scope and should be accompanied by implementation provisions.

Management Planning Guidelines, DOC

Off-site: includes any area of the Park not included within a concessionaire's lease, licence or permit area.

Papatipu Rūnanga: The Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 identified 18 Papatipu Rūnanga, four of which represent the tāngata whenua for Arthur's Pass National Park - see **tāngata whenua**.

Park huts: the public and club huts managed by the Department and the Canterbury Mountaineering Club.

Permit: a grant of rights to undertake an activity which does not require an interest in the land. *Conservation Act 1987*

Pest: Any organism, including an animal, plant, pathogen and disease, capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm or posing significant risks to indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems. *General Policy for National Parks (2005)*

Project Crimson: a charitable trust currently sponsored by Meridian Energy in partnership with the Department. It was formed in 1990 following conservationists' concerns that the pohutukawa was in genuine danger of extinction and its mandate has since been extended to include the cousin of pohutukawa, the tree rata.

Rangatiratanga: chieftainship, decision-making rights.

Recreation/tourism concessionaire: a lessee, a licensee and/or permit holder offering commercial recreation opportunities on land administered by the Department. Examples include high alpine guides, glacier guides and aircraft operators authorised to land in the Park.

Regional Council: a locally elected council that has primary responsibility for management of water, soil, geothermal resources and pollution control. They are also responsible for regional aspects of hazard mitigation, soil conservation and hazardous substances.

Regional Plan: a plan that assists a regional council to carry out its functions. Regional plans are designed to address specific resource management issues for which regional councils are responsible. Councils must decide what regional plans they will prepare. Plans may cover matters such as water management, soil conservation, natural hazard mitigation and air pollution.

Resource Management Act 1991

Regional Policy Statement: a statement which sets out the objectives for managing resources and is prepared by a regional council in accordance with the Resource Management Act 1991. A Regional policy statement provides the overall framework for achieving sustainable management in a region and is binding on regional and district plans.

Resource Management Act 1991, Regional Policy Statements and Plans, Ministry for the Environment

Restoration: The active intervention and management of modified or degraded habitats, ecosystems, landforms and landscapes in order to restore indigenous natural character, ecological and physical processes and their cultural and visual qualities. For historic heritage: to return a place as nearly as possible to a known earlier state.

Review: in relation to a conservation management plan this means to reconsider objectives and policies and, following a process of public comment, to approve a new strategy or plan, having regard to increased knowledge or changed circumstances. *Conservation Act 1987*

Rohe: Geographical territory of an iwi or hapū.

Rōpū Kaitiaki: committees comprising representatives of Canterbury and West Coast/Tai Poutini Papatipu Rūnanga recognised in the Ngāi Tahu Act 1996 and which the Waimakariri and Hokitika Area Offices consult respectively on a regular basis.

Roto: lake

Rūnanga: assembly, council. *Waitangi Tribunal Report (Wai 27) 1991*

Serviced Campsite: A campsite with the greatest range of facilities and services where there are few alternative equivalent accommodation opportunities in the area. Serviced campsites are very few in number and generally do not have the range of facilities provided in many holiday parks. They are booked, accessible by 2WD road, have a camp manager and marked sites, hot showers, clothes washing facilities, water that doesn't require boiling or treatment by campers, facilities suitable for physically disabled people, toilets with toilet paper, cooking shelters/kitchen, rubbish collection and lighting. They may also have cabins and powered sites. *Campsite Service Standards, DOC*

Species Recovery Plan: a plan of action intended to halt the decline of a threatened species and increase its population.

Sustainability, Ecological: means the use of the components of an ecosystem in ways that allow for the perpetuation of the character and natural processes of that ecosystem.

Sustainable Management: managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations, (b) safe-guarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems, and (c) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment. This definition is specific to the Resource Management Act 1991. *Resource Management Act 1991*

Tāngata whenua: iwi or hapū that has customary authority in a place.

General Policy for National Parks (2005)

Taonga species: any birds, plants, and animals described in Schedule 97 of the Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998 found within the claim area.

Ngāi Tahu Claims Settlement Act 1998.

The schedules (see Appendix E) include those species that were negotiated through the settlement to be acknowledged as taonga species. There are also a number of other species of significance to Ngāi Tahu. The settlement provisions do not apply to these other species, but their specific values to Ngāi Tahu can be identified through appropriate consultation, as identified in this Plan.

Taumata okiokinga: figuratively, a great chief; a reference to the mountains named after chiefs.

Tenure review: the process of high-country pastoral lease land tenure review under the Crown Pastoral Land Act 1998.

Threatened (species): a term used to encompass seven classifications for species that are at threat from extinction. Molloy, J. (et al). 2002. Classifying species according to threat of extinction: a system for New Zealand.

Tikanga: Customary values and practices related to specific iwi and hapū.

Tipua: revered being often associated with creation and discovery traditions.

Tipuna/tupuna (pl. **Tipuna/tūpuna**): ancestor

Utilities: Includes, but is not limited to, structures and infrastructure for telecommunications, energy generation and transmission, oil and gas production and distribution, sewerage provision, water supply and flood control, roads and airstrips, hydrological and weather stations.

General Policy for National Parks (2005)

Type locality: the source locality for species when they are first scientifically described.

Vehicle: means any device that is powered by any propulsion system and moves on rollers, skids, tracks, wheels, or other means; and includes any device referred to previously from which the propulsion system has been removed; or the rollers, skids, tracks, wheels, or other means of movement have been removed; and does not include:

- (a) a pushchair or pram;
- (b) a child's toy;
- (c) a personal mobility device used by a disabled person.

This is an abridged definition from the *General Policy for National Parks* (2005). For the full definition see the Land Transport Act 1998.

Wāhi tapu: Place sacred to Māori in a traditional, spiritual, religious, ritual or mythological sense. *Historic Places Trust Act 1993*

WAI 27: the iwi Ngāi Tahu claim lodged with the Waitangi Tribunal against the Crown.

Water Channels: riverbeds, streambeds and swales.

Weedbusters: is a programme where the community and the Department work together to reduce the threat posed by weeds to New Zealand's natural environment.

Wetlands: Permanent or intermittently wet areas, shallow water or land-water margins. They include swamps, bogs, estuaries, braided rivers, and lake margins.

Whanui: as in "Ngāi Tahu whanui" - the extended family of Ngāi Tahu.

Wild Animal: wild animal has the meaning set out in the Wild Animal Control Act 1977 and includes: possums; deer, wallabies, thar, wild goats, wild pigs, and chamois. *Wild Animal Control Act 1977*

Wildlife: any animal (as defined in the Wildlife Act 1953) that is living in a wild state; and includes any such animal or egg or offspring of any such animal held or hatched or born in captivity, whether pursuant to an authority granted under the Wildlife Act 1953 or otherwise; but does not include wild animals subject to the Wild Animal Control Act 1977. *Wildlife Act 1953*

References

- A guideline for filming within the robe of Ngāi Tahu.* 2002. Screen Producers and Directors Association, Wellington and Te Runanga o Ngāi Tahu, Christchurch.
- Adams, J., Cunningham, D., Molloy, J. and Phillipson, S. 1997. *Blue duck (Wbio) Hymenolaimus malacorhynchus recovery plan 1997-2007.* Threatened Species Recovery Plan Series No. 22. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Allocation of cultural materials guideline for the takiwa of the Ngāi Tahu whānui. 2007. Toitu Te Whenua, Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu and Department of Conservation, Southern Operations, Christchurch.
- Booth, K.L., Jones, N.C., and Devlin, P.J. 1999. *Measuring the effects of Aircraft Overflights on Recreationists in Natural Settings.* Department of Conservation Technical Series 18. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Brailly, S. Holder, K. & Wilson, A. [198-]. *Arthur's Pass National Park.* Designprint Press, Christchurch.
- Burrows, C.J. 1986. Botany of Arthur's Pass National Park, South Island, new Zealand, 1. History of botanical studies and checklist of the vascular flora. *New Zealand Journal of Botany, 1986, Vol. 24: 9-68.* Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, Wellington.
- Canada Goose Management Plan.* 1995. South Island Fish and Game Councils. (NB Currently under review).
- Canterbury Conservancy Animal Pest Management Strategy.* 2006. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Conservancy Didymo Management Plan.* 2005. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Conservancy recreation opportunities review, submission analysis and decisions.* 2004. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Conservation Interpretation Plan.* 2000. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Conservation Management Strategy.* 2000. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Natural Resources Regional Plan.* Draft, 2004. Environment Canterbury, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Regional Pest Management Strategy 2005-2015.* 2005. Canterbury Regional Council, Christchurch.
- Canterbury Regional Policy Statement.* 1998. Canterbury Regional Council, Christchurch.
- Cave, M. 1987. *The Geology of Arthur's Pass National Park.* National Parks Scientific Series Number 7. Department of Conservation, Wellington.

- Chadderton, W.L., Brown, D.J. and Stephens, R.T. 2004. *Identifying freshwater ecosystems of national importance for biodiversity : criteria, methods, and candidate list of nationally important rivers*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Code of Practice, Filming on Public Conservation Lands*. 2005. Film New Zealand and Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Conservation General Policy*. 2005. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Customary Use of Natural Resources Consistent with Kaitiakitanga, Wise Conservation and Conservation Legislation (Draft)*, 2001. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Deed of Settlement: parties: Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tabu and Her Majesty the Queen in right of New Zealand* 1997. Office of Treaty Settlements, Wellington.
- Defence Training Agreement*. 1990. Unpublished. Department of Conservation and New Zealand Defence, Wellington.
- de Lange, P. J., Norton, D.A., Heenan, P.B., Courtney, S. P., Molloy, B. P. J., Ogle, C. C., Rance, B. D., Johnson, P. N., and Hitchmough R. 2004. Threatened and uncommon plants of New Zealand. *New Zealand Journal of Botany*, 42(1) 2004 :45-76. Royal Society of New Zealand, Wellington.
- Dennis, A.D. *Arthur's Pass National Park, 1929-1979, The First Fifty Years*. Arthur's Pass National Park Board, Auckland.
- Denis, A.D. & Pearson, J. [Ed], 1986. *The Story of Arthur's Pass National Park*. Arthur's Pass National Park Board, Christchurch.
- Draft Road Management Plan*. 1991. Transit New Zealand, Christchurch.
- Draft Scoping Report: SH73 Mingha Bluff to Rough Creek RP136/4.80 to 9.02*. 2004. Transit New Zealand, Christchurch.
- Espiner, S.R. & Simons, D.G., 1998. A National Park Revisited Assessing Change in Recreational Use of Arthur's Pass National Park. *New Zealand Geographer*, 54(1) 1998:37. New Zealand Geographical Society, Christchurch.
- Grant, A. 1993. *Wild kea management strategy*. Canterbury Conservancy Miscellaneous Report Series No. 4. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Harding, M. 1998. *Waimakariri Area Plant Pest Strategy*. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Hayward, B.W. and Kenny, J.A., Eds. 1999. *Inventory and maps of important geological sites and landforms in the West Coast region*. Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication 105. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.
- Hitchmough, R. (compiler), 2002. *New Zealand Threat Classification System lists 2002*. Threatened Species occasional publication, 23. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Himalayan thar control plan. 1993. In *Canterbury Conservancy Conservation Management Planning Series No. 3*. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.

- Historic Heritage Strategy*. 1995. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Historic Resources Strategy: Canterbury Conservancy*. 1998. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Houghton, B.F., Lloyd, E.F., Keam, R.F. and Johnston, D.M. 1989. Inventory of New Zealand Geothermal Fields and Features. Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication No. 44. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.
- ICOMOS New Zealand Charter for the conservation of places of cultural heritage value*. 1993. Te Mana o Nga Pouwhenua o te Ao - The New Zealand National Committee of the International Council on Monuments and Sites, Auckland.
- Kates, G. 2004. *Arthur's Pass, a Guide for Mountaineers*. New Zealand Alpine Club, Christchurch.
- Kaupapa Atawhai Strategy: Atawhai Ruamano Conservation 2000*. [1997]. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Kearsley, G.W., Coughlan, D.P., Higham, J.E.S., Higham, E.C. and Thyne, M.A. 1998. *Impacts of Tourist Use on the New Zealand Backcountry*. Research Paper Number One. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Kearsley, G.W., Klinskey, A.D., Higham, J.E.S. and Higham, E.C. 1999. *Perception of Wilderness in the South Island of New Zealand: a Multiple Images Approach*. Research Paper Number Four. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Kearsley, G.W., Russell, S., Glen Croy, W. and Mitchell, R.D. 2001. *Recreational and Tourist use of New Zealand's Accessible Natural Areas, Activities, Motivations and Social Impacts*. Research Paper Number Nine. Centre for Tourism, University of Otago, Dunedin.
- Kenny, J.A and Hayward, B.W., Eds. 1998. *Inventory and maps of important geological sites and landforms in the Canterbury region, including the Chatham Islands*. Geological Society of New Zealand Miscellaneous Publication 98. Geological Society of New Zealand, Lower Hutt.
- Law, E. 1980. *A management study of Temple Basin Skifield, Arthur's Pass National Park*. M.Sc. project, Centre for Resource Management, University of Lincoln.
- Logan, R. 1987. *Waimakariri : Canterbury's river of cold rushing water : an illustrated history*. Logan Publishing, Christchurch.
- Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) between Transit New Zealand and Department of Conservation*. 2005. Department of Conservation and Transit New Zealand, Wellington.
- Meyer, K. 1989. *How to shit in the woods: an environmentally sound approach to a lost art*. Ten Speed Press, Berkeley, California.
- Mongillo, M.A. & Clelland, L. 1984. Concise Listing of Information on the Thermal Areas and Thermal Springs of New Zealand. DSIR Geothermal Report Number 9. DSIR, Lower Hutt.

- New Zealand Alpine Club Bolting Policy*. 2005. New Zealand Alpine Club, Christchurch.
- New Zealand Conservation Authority. 2005. *General Policy for National Parks*. New Zealand Conservation Authority, Wellington.
- New Zealand Environmental Care Code: toitu te whenua (leave the land undisturbed)*. 1991. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- New Zealand Tourism Strategy 2010*. 2001. Tourism Strategy Group, Wellington.
- Department of Conservation national possum control plan 1993-2002 – a strategy for sustained protection of native plants and animal communities*. 1994. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- O'Donnell, C., Roberts, A. and Lyall, J. 2002. *Mobua (yellowbead) recovery plan 2002-2012*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Operation ark - operational plan for the Hawdon and Poulter valleys, Canterbury 2005/06 Version 2.0*. 2005. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Owen, S.J. 1998. *Department of Conservation Strategic Plan for Managing Invasive Weeds*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Pascoe, J. 1965. In *New Zealand Alpine Club Bulletin, Number 45*. New Zealand Alpine Club, Christchurch.
- Proposed Selwyn District Plan, Township and Rural Volumes*. 2000 and 2001. Selwyn District Council, Leeston.
- Protocols on the Department of Conservation's Interaction with Ngāi Tabu on Specified Issues*. 1999. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Recreational Strategy for Canterbury Conservancy*. 1994. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.
- Restoring the dawn chorus: a Biodiversity Action Plan for the Hokitika Area*. 2001. Department of Conservation, Hokitika.
- Robertson, H.A. 1996. *Kiwi (Apteryx spp.) recovery plan 1996-2006*. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Salmon Management Plan*. (in prep). North Canterbury and Central South Island Fish and Game Councils.
- SH.73 Arthur's Pass Roading Project - Planning Study: Technical Report - Environmental Factors*. 1987. M.O.W.D., Christchurch.
- Simmons, D.G. 1980. *Summertime visitors to Arthur's Pass National Park - characteristics, motivations, perceptions, impact*. M.Applied Science thesis, University of Canterbury.
- SNZ HB 8630:2004 New Zealand Handbook Tracks and Outdoor Visitor Structures*. 2004. Standards New Zealand, Wellington.
- Standard Operating Procedure: Fire control, operations, procedures and guidelines*. 1999. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- State Highway 73 Arthur's Pass National Park: Environmental Impact Assessment Volumes i and ii*. 1987. M.O.W.D., Christchurch.

- State Highway 73 (Arthur's Pass National Park) Road Management Plan.* (nd). Transit New Zealand, Christchurch.
- Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu Koiwi Tangata Policy.* 1993. Te Rūnanga o Ngāi Tahu, Christchurch.
- The New Zealand Recreational Opportunity Spectrum - Guidelines for users.* 1993. Hillary Commission for Sport, Fitness and Leisure, and Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Thom, D. 1987. *Heritage - The Parks of the People.* Lansdowne Press, Auckland.
- Towards a better network of visitor facilities.* 2003. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Townsend, A.J. 1999. *Pittosporum patulum recovery plan 1999-2009.* Threatened Species Recovery Plan 28. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Visitor and Information Centre Strategy.* 2001. Department of Conservation, Hamilton.
- Visitor Strategy.* 1996. Department of Conservation, Wellington.
- Waimakariri River Regional Plan.* 2004. Canterbury Regional Council, Christchurch.
- West Coast Historic Resources Plan.* 1998. Department of Conservation, Hokitika.
- Westland District Plan.* 2002. Westland District Council, Hokitika.
- Wicked weeds to watch out for ... in Waimakariri Area.* 2002. Department of Conservation, Christchurch.